

DOCUMENT RESUME

ED 361 908

EA 025 306

TITLE School Safety Check Book.  
 INSTITUTION National School Safety Center, Malibu, CA.  
 SPONS AGENCY Department of Justice, Washington, D.C. Office of Juvenile Justice and Delinquency Prevention.  
 REPORT NO ISBN-0-932612-21-0  
 PUB DATE 90  
 CONTRACT 85-MU-CX-0003  
 NOTE 220p.  
 AVAILABLE FROM National School Safety Center, Pepperdine University, Malibu, CA 90263.  
 PUB TYPE Guides - Non-Classroom Use (055) -- Tests/Evaluation Instruments (160)

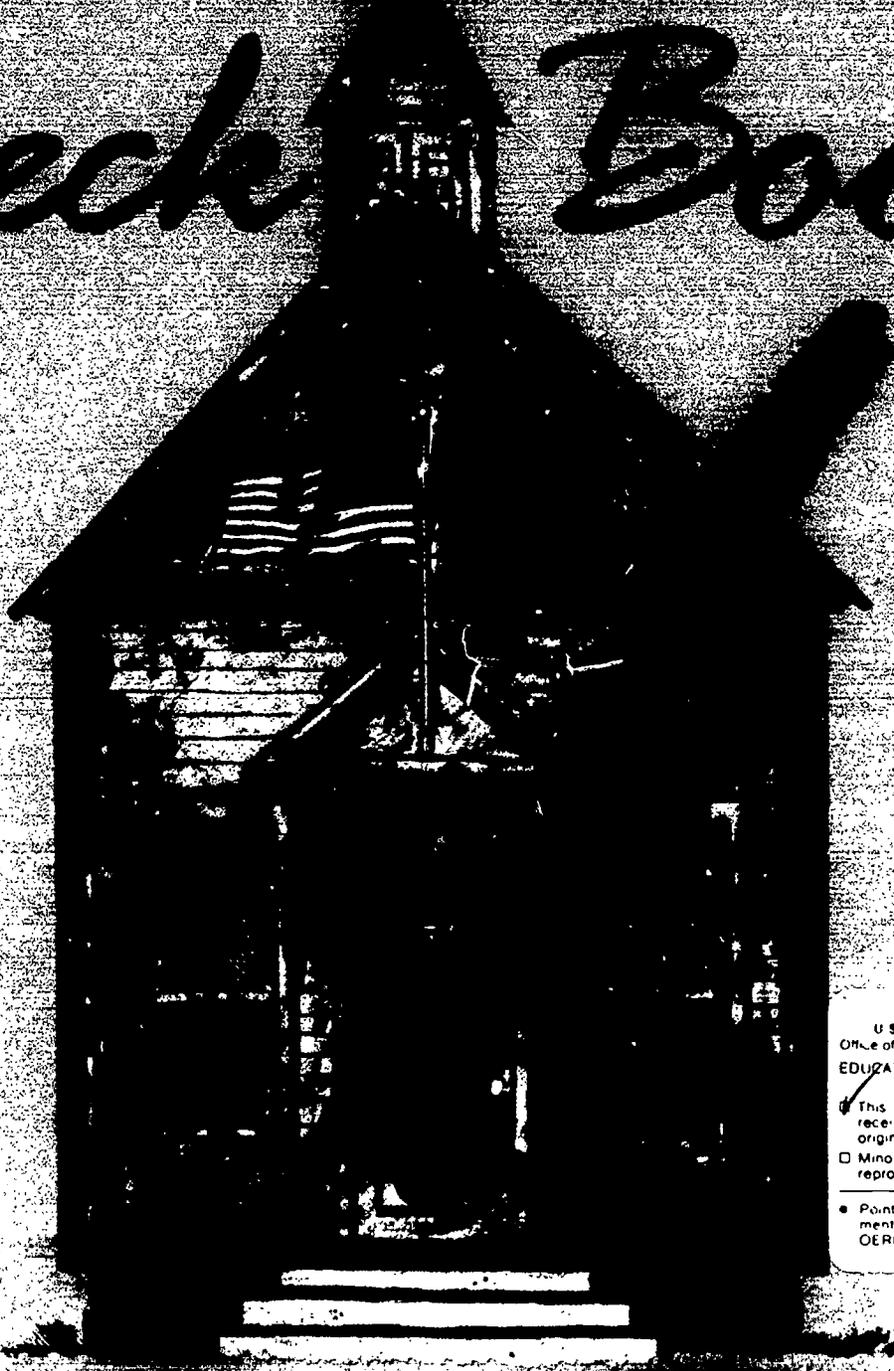
EDRS PRICE MF01/PC09 Plus Postage.  
 DESCRIPTORS \*Administrator Guides; Attendance; \*Check Lists; \*Discipline; \*Educational Environment; Elementary Secondary Education; Models; Safety Education; School Law; \*School Responsibility; \*School Safety; School Security; School Statistics

ABSTRACT

Creating a positive school climate and developing a fair and consistently enforced discipline system are fundamental steps in making school campuses safe. Model programs and policies are presented to minimize student and staff victimization risks by helping evaluate where a school district stands in terms of effective school safety and school crime-prevention programs. The publication's four chapters discuss the following topics: (1) school climate and discipline; (2) school attendance; (3) personal safety; and (4) school security. Designed as a practitioner's handbook, each chapter contains the following sections: the issues, assessing the problems, prevention strategies, response strategies, sample programs, bibliography, and an appended assessment survey. Two chapters contain additional appendixes supplying information on attendance policies, the Chicago Network program, and district policies and procedures. (MLF)

\*\*\*\*\*  
 \* Reproductions supplied by EDRS are the best that can be made \*  
 \* from the original document. \*  
 \*\*\*\*\*

# School Safety Checklist Book



U.S. DEPARTMENT OF EDUCATION  
Office of Educational Research and Improvement  
EDUCATIONAL RESOURCES INFORMATION  
CENTER (ERIC)

This document has been reproduced as received from the person or organization originating it.

Minor changes have been made to improve reproduction quality.

---

• Points of view or opinions stated in this document do not necessarily represent official OERI position or policy.

SCHOOL CLIMATE AND DISCIPLINE • SCHOOL ATTENDANCE  
PERSONAL SAFETY • SCHOOL SECURITY • MODEL PROGRAMS

7 025 306

41153

EA

# School Safety Check Book

---

SCHOOL CLIMATE AND DISCIPLINE      SCHOOL ATTENDANCE  
PERSONAL SAFETY      SCHOOL SECURITY      MODEL PROGRAMS

---

**NATIONAL SCHOOL SAFETY CENTER**

August 1990

# School Safety Check Book

Published by the

**National School Safety Center**

Pepperdine University  
Malibu, CA 90263

**Ronald D. Stephens**, Executive Director  
**G. Ellis Butterfield**, Deputy Director for Operations  
**Ronald W. Garrison**, Field Services Director  
**Bernard James**, Special Counsel  
**James E. Campbell**, Business Services Manager  
**Bill Henegar**, Communications Consultant

Executive Editor: **Ronald D. Stephens**

Project Director: **Stuart A. Greenbaum**

Project Editor: **Brenda Turner**

Contributing Editors: **Nancy Ackley, George E. Butterfield,**  
**Ronald W. Garrison, Judy R. Gruen, June R. Lane,**  
**Vicky Leavitt, Gayle Olson-Raymer, Judith Ryder**

Photocompositors: **Cynthia Randolph, Sharon K. Manjack**

Cover Illustrator: **Steve Kelley**

The National School Safety Center gratefully acknowledges the contributions of the following professionals, whose critiques and editorial suggestions significantly enhanced the quality of this book: **John Burton**, Consultant, Office of the Superintendent, Los Angeles County Schools; **Edward Muir**, Chairman, School Safety Committee, United Federation of Teachers, New York City; and **Glen C. Scrimger**, Consultant, Antioch, California.

Copyright © 1990, Pepperdine University Press. All rights reserved.

First printing: September 1988

Second printing: August 1990

Printed in the United States of America

ISBN: 0-932612-21-0

Prepared under Grant No. 85-MU-CX-0003 from the Office of Juvenile Justice and Delinquency Prevention, Office of Justice Programs, U.S. Department of Justice. Points of view or opinions in this document are those of the authors and do not necessarily represent the official position or policies of the U.S. Department of Justice, U.S. Department of Education or Pepperdine University's National School Safety Center.

## Table of contents

### Chapter I: **School climate and discipline**

The issues _____	9
Assessing the problems _____	11
Prevention strategies _____	14
Response strategies _____	18
Sample programs _____	23
Bibliography _____	35
Appendix — Assessment surveys _____	41

### Chapter II: **School attendance**

The issues _____	66
Assessing the problems _____	70
Prevention strategies _____	71
Response strategies _____	74
Sample programs _____	79
Bibliography _____	89
Appendix I — Assessment surveys _____	92
Appendix II — Chicago Network program _____	94
Appendix III — Attendance policies _____	96

### Chapter III: **Personal safety**

The issues _____	107
Assessing the problems _____	118
Strategies _____	122
Sample programs _____	140
Bibliography _____	165
Appendix I — District policies and procedures _____	173
Appendix II — Assessment surveys _____	179

### Chapter IV: **School security**

The issues _____	189
Assessing the problems _____	192
Prevention policies _____	192
Prevention strategies _____	201
Response strategies _____	202
Sample programs _____	206
Bibliography _____	212
Appendix — Assessment survey _____	215

## Introduction

Creating a positive school climate and developing a fair and consistently enforced discipline system are fundamental steps in making school campuses safe and secure places in which to learn and work.

Being an educator is an incredibly complex task today. Situations that several years ago may have been handled with relative ease are now influenced by court decisions, legislative enactments, possible lawsuits, directives and procedures that can overwhelm the best of educators. It is easy to get in trouble for what we do or what we don't do; what we say or what we don't say; how we teach, how we act and how we counsel. Keeping abreast of laws, regulations, procedures, policies and other techniques for preventing school crime is critical. The bottom line is: "The game is the same, but the rules have changed."

Creating safe schools is the theme of the *School Safety Check Book*, which is replete with relevant and tangible suggestions for assisting educators in promoting a positive educational climate.

A check book is a benchmark of measurement that reflects not only where a person has been, but also more importantly it provides an indication of where a person or organization needs to go — an essential element of the strategic planning process. When one looks at the basic steps involved in the planning process — which includes analyzing where one is to determining where one should go and how to get there — a check book becomes a significant resource to help formulate the plan. A check book also implies the capability of drawing upon available resources for a specific purpose. It is a tool for making a purchase or implementing a plan.

Oftentimes the only difference between success or failure is knowing where one stands in terms of capacity, potential and risk. The *School Safety Check Book* is designed to minimize student and staff victimization risks by helping evaluate where a school district stands in terms of effective school safety and school crime-prevention programs. The emphasis is on the process, not the solutions. The solutions will vary with each school, district and state.

Before adopting any of the model programs and policies presented in this check book, it may be necessary — as well as much more practical — for educators to adapt these ideas to fit their specific school setting. Not only do district policies, state laws and court decisions vary from area to area, but also

socioeconomic conditions, demographics and other community variables impact strategic decision-making.

Independent items, including charts, sample forms and model programs, should be reviewed and considered for use only after they are understood in the contextual framework of the issue they represent. Local and state laws also must be taken into consideration.

The *School Safety Check Book* is designed as a practitioner's handbook. Chapter I, "School climate and discipline," suggests ways to assess school climate and how to address problem areas. It offers administrators and teachers guidelines for developing an effective school discipline plan.

Absenteeism and truancy frequently are linked to other serious problems such as teen-age drug abuse, juvenile crime and delinquency, and gang involvement. One in four U.S. students drops out before completing high school. Dropping out can lead to fewer job opportunities at best and a life of crime at worst. More than half of the nation's prisoners are dropouts. Chapter II, "School attendance," examines the reasons students are absent and eventually drop out of school, giving strategies for increasing attendance.

Students can't learn effectively when they are abusing drugs or alcohol, when they are bullying others or being bullied themselves, when they are involved in gangs, when they are afraid of being attacked at school, when they are victims of abuse or when they are contemplating suicide. Chapter III, "Personal safety," shows how schools, working in cooperation with parents, law enforcement, social service agencies and other community members, can promote the health and safety of children.

In addition to undermining school safety, criminal activities such as vandalism, arson, and campus theft drain educational resources because of their increasingly high cost to schools. Keeping accurate data on these crimes and other school statistics is important because the quality of our decisions is only as good as the quality of our data. Figures on the number of suspensions and expulsions, crime incidents and assaults do more than merely document crime and behavior problems.

Statistics help identify problems and allow administrators to evaluate needs. Keeping good data also enables the school or district to plan effective response strategies and even obtain funds for community, federal, state or corporate support to implement model or demonstration school crime prevention programs. Chapter IV, "School security," describes the role school law enforcement or campus security personnel can play as well as outlining other methods in making campuses physically safer and more secure.

Many school districts are now recognizing the need to develop strategies that promote safe, secure and peaceful campuses. Teachers cannot teach and students cannot learn in an environment of crime, violence, intimidation and fear. By removing these barriers, we give young people an equal opportunity for educational excellence — perhaps the most precious gift we can give this generation of youngsters.

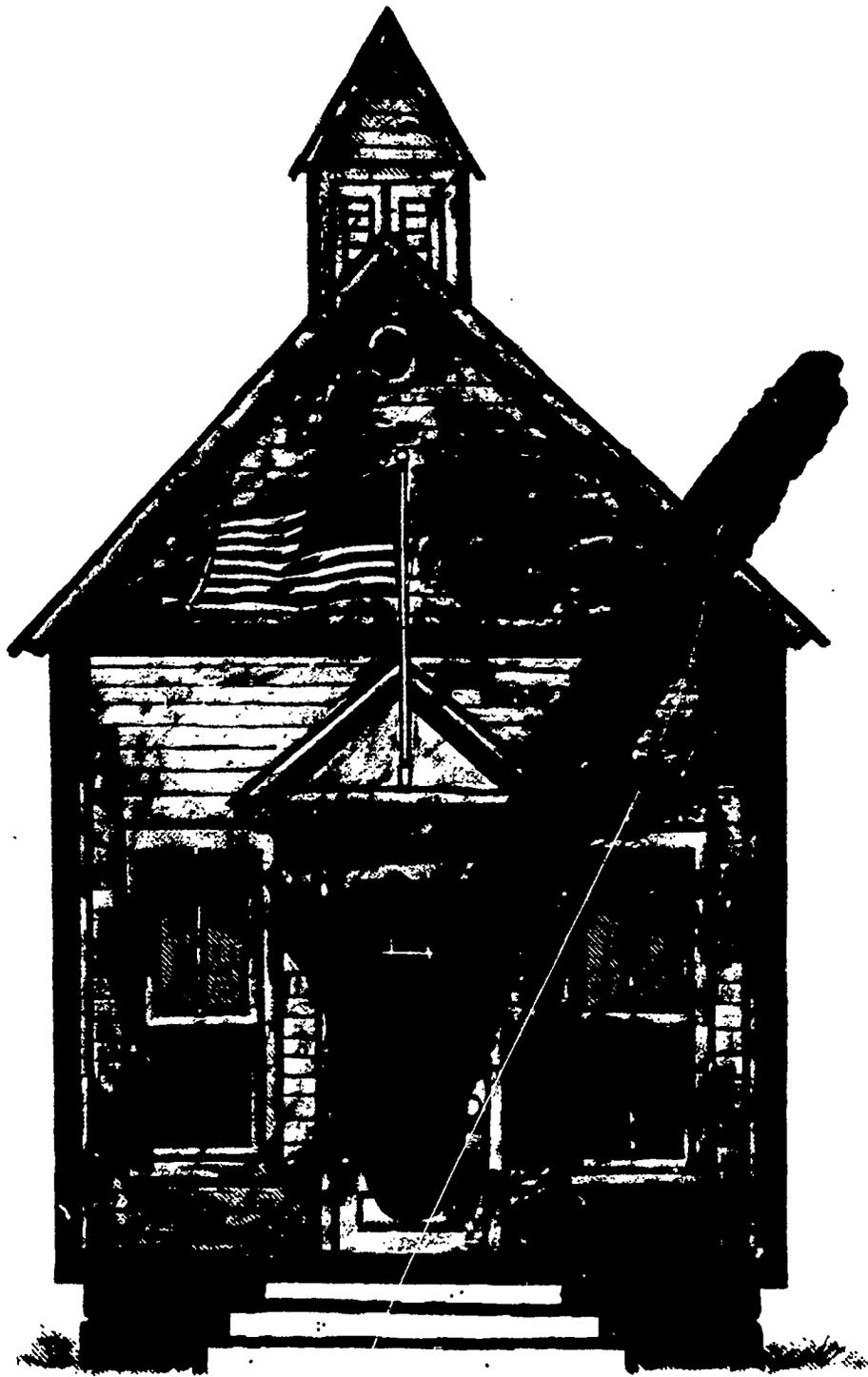
*Ronald D. Stephens  
Executive Director  
National School Safety Center*

---

## Chapter I

# School climate and discipline

The issues _____	9
Assessing the problems _____	11
Prevention strategies _____	14
Response strategies _____	18
Sample programs _____	23
Bibliography _____	35
Appendix — Assessment surveys _____	41



## Chapter I

# School climate and discipline

In recent years, various committees and crusaders have taken America's schools to task. The National Education Association estimates "no fewer than 240 commissions, task forces, panels and think tanks have now passed judgment on what ails our schools and how they can be 'cured.' " Reports and data from such groups have, in turn, sparked renewed cries for educational reform from elected officials, parents, community members and educators themselves. Increasingly, Americans are demanding academic improvements and challenging schools to be better and safer places in which to teach and learn.

School climate and its effect on student attitudes, behavior and achievement are particular concerns. The educational community is beginning to examine individual schools, noting those characteristics that foster or inhibit achievement and order. Information about what does and what does not work is emerging.

This chapter provides an overview of school climate and discipline, practical methods for assessment, and examples of successful strategies and programs. Sample policy statements, survey instruments and other prepared materials are included for schools to use directly or adapt to meet their individual needs. This section is intended to supply a foundation and direction for those working to improve school climate and discipline.

### The issues

*School climate* is the general tone or prevailing attitude within the school. It is the personality of the institution. Climate encompasses the physical attributes of a school as well as levels of order, satisfaction and productivity. It includes how students, faculty, other staff members and the community interact and what approaches are used to solve campus problems. Climate reflects whether students feel they belong at the school and how campus rules are determined, expressed, understood and enforced.

In California, good school climate has been defined by the state Supreme Court as "safe and welcoming," while the state constitu-

tion mandates students be provided a "safe, secure and peaceful" learning environment. (Table 1-A offers a student perspective of school climate determinants.)

Research indicates that schools with positive climates usually demonstrate continuous academic and social growth, cohesiveness, two-way communication, trust, respect, high morale, change, improvement, concern and caring. Firm, fair and consistent discipline also is an essential component of a positive school climate.

Unfortunately, to some the term *discipline* may evoke images of birch rods and paddles liberally applied to the backsides of unruly students. While corporal punishment is legally allowed in 30 states

**Table 1-A**  
**What Affects School Climate?**  
*(A Student Perspective)*

**Student involvement:** The extent to which students participate in and enjoy classes and extracurricular activities at school.

**Student relationships:** The way students relate to one another, and the ease they feel in making friends and dealing with new people.

**Teacher support:** The amount of help, concern and friendship that teachers direct toward students; whether teachers talk openly, trust students and are interested in their ideas and feelings.

**Physical environment:** The way students feel about the school buildings themselves and the atmosphere they create.

**Conflict resolution:** Whether students are clear about their rights and responsibilities, how conflicts are resolved and whether rules are consistently enforced.

**Participation in decision-making:** The extent to which students, administrators and teachers share responsibility for decisions about school improvement.

**Curriculum:** The extent to which students feel that what is taught in classes meets their needs.

**Counseling services:** Whether or not students feel counselors are accessible and able to help with personal problems, job and career information, and concerns about drugs, alcohol or sex.

**Recreation alternatives:** Whether students are satisfied with existing activities and teachers' support of these activities; whether new activities are needed.

**Personal stress:** The extent to which students feel they are under pressure and the resources they have to cope with it.

*Source: Sherrin Bennett, Something More Than Survival: A Student Initiated Process for School Climate Improvement. Lafayette, California: Center for Human Development, 1978.*

and is classified as a major disciplinary tool in many schools, it remains a very controversial sanction. Discipline also may take the form of a legalistic code, a demerit system or a list of increasingly punitive sanctions.

Discipline has many nuances. It has been defined as "training that is expected to produce a specific character or pattern of behavior, especially training that produces moral or mental improvement." One group of educators has described discipline as "ordered behavior that leads to better learning."

Within this context, discipline is not something that simply does or does not exist in a school. It is the means by which students are nurtured to learn, to develop responsibility and, ultimately, to control their own actions. Discipline is a social necessity; it is the essence of learning.

High expectations, respect, trust and positive reinforcement of correct behavior are found consistently in schools demonstrating good discipline. When this climate exists and students are engaged in productive and satisfying classroom work, discipline problems are significantly diminished. If, on the other hand, the atmosphere is one of hostility and insensitivity and students are continually subjected to criticism and failure, serious disciplinary problems and criminal behaviors are likely to erupt.

Even in the best environments, some misbehavior will occur that requires the enforcement of established codes of conduct. School conduct codes must clearly define unacceptable behavior and distinguish between rule infractions, which require an internal or administrative school response, and criminal acts, which warrant law enforcement and/or criminal justice intervention. Incident reports should be kept and reviewed regularly.

Discipline is viewed by many as the foundation for the educational process. Television and radio talk shows have frequently featured discussions on school discipline, and it also has been the focus of many research studies. Discipline in the schools has been a primary concern in public opinion polls as well. In the 1989 Gallup Poll on the "Public's Attitudes Toward the Public Schools," those questioned cited discipline as the second most serious problem facing the nation's schools. Drug abuse led the list as the foremost problem for the last four years, but lack of discipline was rated as the top problem in 16 of the 21 past Gallup Polls.

### **Assessing the problems**

Evaluating school climate and discipline requires internal assessment. The effort must identify the school's needs and concerns, examine the underlying causes of student disorder, seek corrective measures and establish priorities for improvements. The more peo-

*Discipline is viewed by many as the foundation for the educational process.*

ple involved in the process — students, faculty, non-certificated staff and community members — the more complete the evaluation will be.

The assessment process usually is initiated by the principal, who must determine the purpose and scope of any change. The principal is responsible for framing goals, setting expectations, and implementing standards for staff members and students. Because schools begin with different strengths and weaknesses, approaches to assessing the problems will vary.

When a good school climate exists, the objective is to maintain this positive atmosphere. An effective principal encourages suggestions from students and staff, evaluates proposals for campus improvement and implements the recommendations that are beneficial.

If negative situations are escalating, immediate intervention is required. One effective approach is the creation of a principal's *support team*, which includes teachers, administrators, classified staff and students. Support team meetings provide an opportunity to share concerns and suggestions.

When a school confronts major problems, more comprehensive steps are needed to reverse the situation. A successful strategy is to augment the representation of the support team by including district administrators, parents and community representatives. Law enforcers and social service personnel also can be called in for consultation.

Having each team or council member make a personal evaluation of school operations is a logical way to begin the assessment process. (Table 1-B is an informal, basic survey for the principal or advisory group members to use in rating school climate.) When these personal evaluations are compared, the group may find mutual concerns.

The group should consider how extensive the final assessment will be. Since comprehensive assessments are time-consuming, members may decide to focus on those areas that have been identified as problems by several group members. It is important to consider, however, that restricting early data collection may cause bias and jeopardize the final improvement plan.

Existing information-collection systems should be extensively reviewed. School districts routinely collect statistics in many areas, including grades, test scores, absenteeism and dropout rates. Many schools also record disciplinary infractions and crimes. Such information helps planners determine trends in school climate.

Schools may choose to design a school survey in-house or use a standardized assessment instrument. While self-designed surveys can be time-consuming and difficult to prepare, they can provide information tailored to the special needs of the school. Standard-

**Table 1-B**  
**How Positive is Your School's Climate?**

For a quick look at how your school's climate compares with others serving similar pupils, rate the following factors on a scale of 1 to 4 (1 = strongly disagree, 2 = disagree, 3 = agree, 4 = strongly agree).

- \_\_\_ 1. Our school has comparatively few discipline problems.
- \_\_\_ 2. Vandalism is not a problem in our school.
- \_\_\_ 3. Attendance is good in this school.
- \_\_\_ 4. Our student and staff morale is high.
- \_\_\_ 5. Our pupil achievement is high.
- \_\_\_ 6. Pupils feel a high sense of ownership and pride in this school.
- \_\_\_ 7. Our staff and students trust, care about and respect one another a great deal.
- \_\_\_ 8. Our school's various social groups, or cliques, communicate well with one another, respect one another and work together for the benefit of the school.
- \_\_\_ 9. Our students and staff frequently participate in problem-solving and school-improvement activities.
- \_\_\_ 10. The threat level in our school is low (i.e., people do not have to worry about being treated disrespectfully, becoming failures or being physically harmed).
- \_\_\_ TOTAL

A score under 20 indicates a very negative school climate; 20-25 is negative; 26-30 is positive; and above 30 is a very positive climate.

*Source: Adapted from Robert S. Fox, Eugene R. Howard and Edward Brainard, School Climate Improvement: A Challenge to the School Administrator. Englewood, Colorado: C.F. Kettering, Ltd., 1973.*

ized tools often can be quickly administered and analyzed, however, they may not address the concerns of a specific school and they can be expensive. (The Appendix at the end of this chapter provides three surveys to assess perceptions of school climate and discipline.)

While the number of people participating in the survey is dictated by the time and resources available, the most successful improvement plans result when input comes from all segments of the school community. Comprehensive projects include the insight of administrative, instructional and non-certificated staff, students, parents and other community members.

It is also advisable, even before data collection begins, to consider how the information will be shared and used. Is it for internal school use only or will it be shared with parents, the school board, superintendent, community or media? Schools may welcome media coverage as part of a community public relations campaign or may decide to limit data distribution.

The assessment likely will produce unanticipated data. Discrep-

***A recent study found improved school management policies were more effective in reducing misconduct than “get-tough” discipline measures.***

ancies may exist among the perceptions of students, teachers, administrators and the general community. A single problem may stand out. The data may reveal the larger picture, a general attitude about school climate and discipline.

Once the assessment has been analyzed, the school advisory group must plan and implement steps to correct specific problems.

### **Prevention strategies**

General improvements in the school environment often work to prevent dissatisfaction and discipline problems. A recent study found improved school management policies were more effective in reducing misconduct than “get-tough” discipline measures. The following strategies contribute to a positive school climate and may reduce or prevent discipline and crime problems in schools:

- Problem-solving and decision-making steps should involve students, teachers and other staff members whenever practical. This management approach makes individuals feel valued and respected. Participation in policy-setting procedures also creates a sense of ownership and a responsibility for maintaining order.
- A positive academic environment contributes to school climate. Counseling programs should help students develop a purpose and goal for their education. Administrators and teachers need to convey their expectations of high academic standards. Learning environments should be creative and stimulating, and teachers should employ varied instruction techniques.
- An ineffective administration, poor curricula or other weaknesses usually are inter-related. Problems tend to spread quickly and cause breakdowns in other areas as well. An active, involved and visible principal who leads both the staff and students by example plays a key role in creating and maintaining a positive school climate. Remember that it is much easier to preserve a good school climate than to restore it once it has been lost.
- Carefully prepared codes of conduct, discipline procedures, and student rights and responsibilities should be written clearly and disseminated to parents, students and staff. The best codes are those that are short and worded simply. (Table I-C is a model school conduct code.) Students and parents should be aware of the sanctions for violating stated rules. (Table I-D is a parent/student school contract that reinforces the school conduct code.)
- Teachers and administrative staff members need periodic training to keep abreast of current methods of discipline and management. (Table I-E is an overview of the widely used *Assertive Discipline* approach.)
- Curricula should include instructional units that promote student citizenship, positive character development and responsibility.

**Table 1-C**  
**Guidelines for Student Behavior**  
**North Clackamas School District, Milwaukie, Oregon**

<i>Problem area</i>	<i>Occurrence</i>	<i>Action to be taken</i>	
		<i>Minimum</i>	<i>Maximum</i>
Tardiness	First	Informal talk	Parent involvement
	Repeated	Conference	Short suspension
Unexcused absence	First	Informal talk	Short suspension
	Repeated	Parent involvement	Expulsion
Defiance of authority	First	Conference	Short suspension
	Repeated	Parent involvement	Expulsion
Disorderly or disruptive conduct	First	Informal talk	Short suspension
	Repeated	Parent involvement	Long suspension
Automobile misuse	First	Informal talk	Long suspension
	Repeated	Parent involvement	Expulsion
Bus misconduct	First	Conference	Loss of bus riding privilege
	Repeated	Suspension from bus	
Forgery or lying	First	Informal talk	Short suspension
	Repeated	Conference	Long suspension
Gambling	First	Informal talk	Short suspension
	Repeated	Conference	Long suspension
Theft	First	Parent involvement	Expulsion
	Repeated	Short suspension	Expulsion
Tobacco	First	Informal talk	Short suspension
	Repeated	Parent involvement	Expulsion
Mischief	First	Informal talk	Long suspension
	Repeated	Parent involvement	Expulsion
Vandalism	First	Conference	Long suspension
	Repeated	Parent involvement	Expulsion
Alcohol or drugs	First	Long suspension and assessment	Expulsion
	Repeated	Expulsion and assessment	Expulsion
Recklessly endangering	First	Informal talk	Long suspension
	Repeated	Parent involvement	Expulsion
Menacing or harassment	First	Conference	Long suspension
	Repeated	Parent involvement	Expulsion
Assault	First	Parent involvement	Expulsion
	Repeated	Short suspension	Expulsion
Fighting	First	Parent involvement	Short suspension
	Repeated	Parent involvement	Expulsion
Weapons	First	Informal talk	Expulsion
	Repeated	Parent involvement	Expulsion
Extortion	First	Parent involvement	Expulsion
	Repeated	Long suspension	Expulsion
Explosive devices	First	Parent involvement	Expulsion
	Repeated	Long suspension	Expulsion
Arson	First	Short suspension	Expulsion
	Repeated	Expulsion	Expulsion

**Table 1-D**  
**George Washington Preparatory High School**  
**Parent/Student Contract**

I apply for admission as a student to George Washington Preparatory High School. I have read the rules, policies and regulations of the school or have had them explained to me. I agree to abide by them.

Signed \_\_\_\_\_ Date \_\_\_\_\_

My child \_\_\_\_\_ and I have read and discussed the rules, regulations, educational policy, student conduct and dress codes, discipline policy, attendance policy and homework policy of George Washington Preparatory High School.

I agree to encourage my child to follow these rules and policies and undertake to become personally involved in my child's education.

Signed \_\_\_\_\_ Date \_\_\_\_\_

Address \_\_\_\_\_

Zip Code \_\_\_\_\_ Phone Number \_\_\_\_\_

(Note: George Washington Senior High School is a public high school within the Los Angeles Unified School District. It is referred to by the principal and students as "George Washington Preparatory High School" as part of a school climate/attitude improvement process.)

*Source: George Washington Senior High School, Los Angeles, California.*

For example, a character education curriculum could include the discussion of problems that forces students to confront issues and explore values such as courage, generosity, honor, justice, tolerance and freedom. Law and citizenship programs teach students about the principles of democratic society. Lessons that stress non-violence and caring show students alternative means of conflict resolution.

- Group forums provide outlets for questions and opinions that otherwise might go unexpressed. An innovative approach is to stage a discussion using the format of the *Phil Donahue Show*. Students act as the participating audience and react to panel discussions by teachers, administrators or other students.
- Involving parents in school activities and in their child's education is fundamental to a positive school climate. Schools should develop a parent volunteer program and encourage parents to visit their child's classroom. Teachers should make regular home visits, phone calls or written contact with parents.
- *Big Brother/Big Sister* programs that match new students with upper-class students promote a supportive climate.
- School/business partnerships create collaborative efforts between schools and local commercial enterprises. Sometimes the alliance agreements stipulate that if the school improves student

**Table 1-E**  
**Guidelines for an Effective Discipline Plan**

1. Set down some basic general rules of behavior, such as: follow directions; raise hand before speaking; stay in seat; keep hands, feet and objects to yourself; and no cursing or teasing.
2. Allow a maximum of five negative consequences for disruptive behavior. Here is a hypothetical plan: The first time a student breaks one of the rules, his or her name is put on the board as a warning. The second time, a check mark is put next to the name and the student must stay after school for 15 minutes. The third time, a second check is made, which means 30 minutes after school. The fourth time means three check marks and 30 minutes after school, plus a phone call to the student's parents. The fifth means four check marks and the student is sent to the principal or vice principal.
3. At the end of the day, all the names and check marks should be erased. Never erase a name or check mark as a reward for good behavior, however.
4. In cases of severe disruption, the student is sent immediately to the principal.
5. The principal is always the last consequence in the plan; he or she must approve the teacher's plan before it is put into operation and must be notified if any changes are made in it. In addition, the principal and the teacher should decide in advance what will be done with students who are sent to the principal's office.
6. A copy of the discipline plan should be sent to all the parents.
7. The plan applies to all students in the classroom. If after three days or so the plan does not appear to be working with one or more of the students, make the plan stricter.
8. For students who present more severe behavior problems, the teacher should consider other consequences, such as one of the following:
  - Send the student to an in-school suspension room. The student is suspended from class and sent to an isolation room where he or she does academic work in silence, monitored by another teacher or an administrator. The student does not participate in recess or lunch; he or she eats alone and is escorted to the rest room. Disruptive behavior in the suspension room earns the student extra hours of isolation.
  - Record disruptive behavior. Place a cassette tape recorder next to the student and turn it on if he or she disrupts the class. The tape is then saved to be played at a conference with the parents and the principal.
  - Send the student to another classroom instead of to the principal's office. The disruptive student should be sent to a well-run classroom, at a different grade level, where he or she will spend half an hour sitting quietly in back of the class doing academic work. The student takes no part in class activity. If the student is disruptive again, he or she is sent for an additional 30 minutes to another classroom. (Note: Teachers should plan in advance with other teachers if they intend to use this technique.)

*Source: Lee Cantor, Cantor & Associates, Inc., P.O. Box 2113, Santa Monica, California 90406.*

***Student contracts encourage improved behavior. The student formally agrees to achieve stated objectives by entering into a contract with parents, peers, school staff or volunteers who monitor progress.***

capability to an established level, the private-sector partner will hire a specified number of graduates. Other businesses provide partner schools with tutors, lecturers, career days or donations of supplies and equipment.

- School public relations efforts promote community awareness and participation. (Table 1-F provides suggestions from the National School Public Relations Association.) Public relations campaigns may include publishing a newsletter from the principal, inviting the community to campus activities, encouraging use of campus facilities by businesses and community organizations, creating a faculty-staffed speakers bureau, having a citizen-of-the-week honored by the school or displaying work by community artists at campus shows.

### **Response strategies**

When campus climate and discipline problems occur on a regular basis, the school should increase efforts to manage student misconduct and to prevent misbehavior from escalating. Most emphasize systematic discipline methods and follow-up intervention strategies stressing individualized attention and increased parent involvement. Following are curricula and activities that may be employed:

- Discipline management systems should establish reasonable, consistent and clear limits for students. When firmly, fairly and consistently enforced, they serve as effective short-term responses to misconduct.
- *Time-out areas or rooms* are used as cooling-off areas for students. Removed from confrontational situations, students discuss the inappropriate behavior with staff. Little or no counseling or academic service is offered in this short-term system.
- *Student contracts* encourage improved behavior. The student formally agrees to achieve stated objectives by entering into a contract with parents, peers, school staff or volunteers who monitor progress. (Table 1-G is a sample contract.) Contracts should be simple and specific, and students should understand the penalties for non-compliance.
- Parent involvement is recommended when misbehavior persists. It reinforces school site discipline, increases understanding of personal situations or other circumstances affecting the student, and promotes parental support for alternative classes, learning contracts or other intervention strategies.
- Discipline should be carried out in a timely manner. To be effective, an immediate response — preferably within 24 hours — is essential. Don't let paperwork prolong the discipline process into days or even weeks.
- Counseling programs can modify behavior. *Guidance counseling*

**Table 1-F**  
**Excerpts from *Learn from the Winners:***  
***School PR Programs That Work***

If an experienced public relations professional should offer a beginner any single piece of advice, it's that public relations programs must be "total." Even if the person responsible for it is part time, the program cannot be. The budget does not have to be large, but the commitment to communicating — in good times as well as bad, in moments of calm as well as days of crisis — must be total.

No total public relations program, or even a crises program for that matter, could be considered outstanding without including four basic components as integral parts of the overall plan. These components are:

(1) analyzing, (2) planning, (3) communicating and (4) evaluating.

**How to produce publications that work**

- (1) Never lose sight of your audience.
- (2) Know the purpose of the publication.
- (3) Have your design enhance the message, not obscure it.
- (4) Have your material typeset if possible.
- (5) Be judicious in your use of color.
- (6) Use photographs, but use them well.

**Winning media relations techniques**

- (1) Maintain close personal contact with news people.
- (2) Conduct special orientations for new press people.
- (3) Distribute new releases on systemwide stories using a journalistic sound news style.
- (4) Send "media tips" on feature story possibilities.
- (5) Provide memos to news media on upcoming events of interest.
- (6) Develop public service announcements for radio and television.
- (7) Provide press packets for school board meetings.
- (8) Develop weekly taped radio programs about the school system.
- (9) Provide information, photos and articles for local media.
- (10) Arrange interviews of board and key staff members.
- (11) Maintain a file of news clips that demonstrate the success of your efforts.

**Guidelines for working with reporters**

- (1) Respect deadlines.
- (2) Protect your credibility by providing reporters with the facts — straightly, honestly and sincerely.
- (3) Don't clam up. Your best protection against an erroneous, slanted story is a reporter who fully understands the situation.
- (4) Speak English, not "educationese." "Criterion-referenced testing" probably has little meaning to the reporter or the public.
- (5) Help the reporter get the story, but don't tell him how to report it.
- (6) Don't ask to see a story before it is run.
- (7) Make your staff and facilities available to the reporter.
- (8) Give reporters advance notice of newsworthy events.
- (9) Be as brief as possible.

*Source: Learn from the Winners: School PR Programs That Work, The National School Public Relations Association, 1801 North Moore Street, Arlington, Virginia 22209.*

**Table 1-G**  
**Student Contract**

I, \_\_\_\_\_, agree to accomplish  
(student's name)  
the following:

\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

I, \_\_\_\_\_, agree to help this  
(administrator, parent, teacher)  
student in these ways:

\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

This contract extends from \_\_\_\_\_  
(date)  
to \_\_\_\_\_ or until revised by  
(date)  
mutual consent.

Signatures: \_\_\_\_\_  
(student)  
\_\_\_\_\_  
(parent)  
\_\_\_\_\_  
(teacher or administrator)

may avert some discipline problems through schedule changes, learning contracts, vocational counseling, tutoring or other methods that increase student success. *Peer counseling* uses students trained in fundamentals to work with peers on school-related problems. Some students find this less threatening than adult counseling, however, peer counselors are limited in authority and expertise. *Personal counseling* is employed for misbehavior caused by personal, family or emotional problems.

- Conflict-management techniques are diverse. Conflict-management teams employ natural student leaders who are trained in communication skills. These students are called upon to defuse anger, conflict, rumors and racial tension. (See "Project S.M.A.R.T." in the Sample Programs section of this chapter.) Open student forums are used when potential conflicts involve large groups or the entire student body, and assemblies are the customary setting for discussing such issues. Discipline courts or review boards serve as a forum for disputes between students and teachers.
- Educational alternatives provide non-traditional learning environments for students. Innovative programs help students experience success. Instructional options include opportunity schools,

schools-within-a-school, magnet schools, schools without walls, work experience, vocational training and wilderness/outdoor education experiences.

- Suspension generally prohibits students from attending classes for a limited number of days following misbehavior. Some schools deny credit for assignments completed during suspension while others encourage or require academic work to be made up.
- Suspension alternatives include *on-site suspension* and *Saturday school*. On-site suspension is an increasingly popular alternative because it bars misbehaving students from regular class participation and extracurricular activities while requiring attendance in a special classroom. The school is credited with daily attendance, and students who may not have daytime supervision at home are closely monitored. During Saturday school, work projects may be assigned to supplement the academic curriculum.
- Expulsion is generally the last resort for the most serious misbehavior. It prohibits students from returning to the district for periods ranging from several weeks to permanently. This sanction always requires board approval.
- Alternative schools are structured programs that remove the student from regular programs, restrict participation in extracurricular activities, and stress the completion of assignments, good conduct, self-discipline, accountability and responsibility. Several school models exist, and many allow students to progress at individual paces.
- *Success-oriented school* (SOS) focuses on discipline and educational programs. Staff members mutually agree to five or six basic rules and the consequences for violations. Discipline is consistent, students are aware of the rules, and behavior and other goals must be met before students may return to regular classes. Students are motivated by a desire to return to the regular social setting.
- Community-centered schools are designed to involve and assist students not successful in regular school programs. These schools serve students who have been expelled, have been referred from school attendance review boards or the courts, have truancy problems or have no other feasible educational options. The focus is on flexibility, individual attention, academic and social skills, and group cohesiveness. Community support services and family involvement also are employed.
- *Adjustment schools* serve minors who are, or are in danger of becoming, habitually truant, irregular in attendance, insubordinate or disorderly. These students are committed by court order to adjustment schools that provide a secure setting during normal school hours. The goal is to resolve problems and eventual-

***On-site suspension is an increasingly popular alternative because it bars misbehaving students from regular class participation and extracurricular activities while requiring attendance in a special classroom.***

ly return students to regular classrooms.

- *Day treatment* for delinquent or disturbed youths usually is funded through county social service agencies or the probation department. Programs serve delinquent youths who live at home while attending day treatment centers. They receive family therapy, tutorial services, survival skills training, recreation, and individual and group counseling in addition to being taught traditional academic subjects.
- Community service programs require students to spend a certain number of hours working in the community. Assignments might include helping the elderly, cleaning up the school grounds or a local park, or a variety of other volunteer projects.
- All youths with behavior problems should be tested for learning disabilities or emotional handicaps. If problems are found, the child may need to be placed in a special education program. Teachers and administrators also need to be sensitive to those students who may have different learning styles from many of their classmates but who can be successful if given the proper guidance and encouragement.
- Special discipline procedures are required in dealing with handicapped children. The U.S. Supreme Court, ruling in January 1988 in the case of *Honig v. Doe*, determined that the right of a dangerous handicapped child to attend public school as required under the Education of the Handicapped Act (EHA) outweighs his potential threat to the well-being of others on campus. Handicapped children must remain in their current educational setting, unless their parents or guardians agree otherwise, until lengthy administrative hearings are completed. The court recommended use of study carrels, time-outs, detentions or the restriction of privileges in disciplining handicapped children.

### Sample programs

Efforts to solve school climate and discipline problems are greatly enhanced by community assistance and support. Many programs addressing these problems employ collaborative efforts and involve a variety of community agencies and resources. Several model efforts are described in this section. (Note: Schools or organizations with programs that enhance school climate and discipline are encouraged to submit a description of their program to the National School Safety Center. These programs will be reviewed for addition to the Center's clearinghouse resources.)

#### Mission Middle School

Jurupa Unified School District  
5961 Mustang Lane  
Riverside, California 92509  
714/360-2842

#### *Background and objectives*

In the late 1970s, Mission was characterized by the community as a "rough school with very low test scores." By the mid-'80s, this suburban middle school with approximately 1,100 students (49 percent white and 51 percent black, Hispanic or other minority) was described by the community as a "good school with kids who are learning." During the 1983-84 school year, Mission Junior High School was selected by the U.S. Department of Education for inclusion in its Secondary School Recognition Program. Additionally, it has been identified as a Middle School Partnership School.

The effort to change Mission's school climate focused on two goals: improving student self-esteem and providing an academic campus environment.

#### *Program description*

To accomplish Mission's goals, administrators adopted the following programs and tactics designed to improve general school climate and student conduct:

- Assertive Discipline Program — Clearly stated rules are blended with positive consequences of behavior for all students.
- Excessive Tardies Program — Attendance and tardy rules are enforced by emphasizing the need for regular, prompt attendance.
- Principal's Open-Door Policy — The principal begins early in the morning greeting students and staff members and continues throughout the day. The principal also encourages the informal exchange of ideas, concerns and plans.
- Principal's Administrative Cabinet — Administrators and teachers

*The effort to change Mission's school climate focused on two goals: improving student self-esteem and providing an academic campus environment.*

meet monthly to collaboratively solve curriculum policy and procedure issues.

- **Building Block Program** — A theme was selected each year to communicate school goals and enhance administrative leadership. To promote the 1981-82 theme, "Building for Success," activities were designed to improve student academic performance, behavior and participation in school life. "Success Builds Pride" (1982-83) focused on activities promoting individual and school pride. "We Care" (1983-84) committed the staff to creating a safe and orderly learning environment. Other themes were "Pride is Our Guide" (1984-85), "A Reflection of Quality" (1985-86) and "We CAN DO IT!" (1986-87), when the program was concluded.

Activities to improve student self-esteem include:

- **Mission Advisory Program (MAP)** — A daily, 10-minute mini-lesson emphasizing problem-solving is presented during the student's advisory period. Lessons, which are incorporated into a handbook, cover avoiding a fight, lunch rules, getting along with other students, test-taking strategies and conflict resolution.
- **Mustang Fever** — A schoolwide incentive program collaboratively designed by students, staff and community members rewards students for good behavior. "Good Guy" assemblies, pizza certificates, books and T-shirts were rewards.

Activities to provide a more academic campus environment include:

- **University of California at Riverside Partnership Program** — Initiated by the principal, the program encourages underachieving students and underrepresented minority students to consider the importance of a college education. Participating students receive tutorial services from college students.
- **Parent Volunteer Program** — This principal-initiated program encourages parents and community members to volunteer for a variety of on-campus services, many of them academic in nature.
- **Academic Olympics** — A schoolwide competitive program involves every student in a "college bowl" quiz show activity.
- **Active Honor Society** — This organization provides recognition activities and field trips for students maintaining a 3.5 grade point average or higher.
- **Interdisciplinary Teams** — Four teachers from the four academic subjects share a group of 190 students, creating a more family-like environment within the school. Positive results from this program include improved academics and self-esteem.

*Interagency collaboration*

Mission Junior High School educators work collaboratively within the school and with the surrounding community. Local civic groups present annual awards for outstanding student achievement. In addition, local businesses donate coupons and gifts for Mustang Fever student incentive programs. The University of California at Riverside provides tutorial and teaching services to Mission students.

**Central High School**

70 Fricker Street  
Providence, Rhode Island 02903  
401/456-9111

*Background and objectives*

After passage of the Providence Plan for desegregation in the mid-1970s, Central High School's large, multiracial, urban campus faced serious racial disruption. But the school's diversity has persisted. During the current school year, it was estimated that Central had students from nearly 50 countries throughout the world, including large populations from Southeast Asia and Central America. Beginning in 1976, an emphasis was placed on making Central High School a viable educational institution. Consequently, a program with six major objectives was established:

- Students and staff would have a clean and well-maintained building.
- Students' self-image would improve.
- Better school/community relations would develop.
- The curriculum would be examined and necessary changes and improvements would be made.
- A more positive student/teacher interaction would be developed.
- Discipline programs would be modified to meet the needs of a changing school population.

*Program description*

Since that time, many activities and programs have been created and maintained in pursuit of these objectives. Central High School's internal and external images have greatly improved, as have school/community relations and academic achievement. Particularly successful methods include:

- Clear school policies define school rule violations while assuring that disciplinary infractions are handled fairly and consistently.
- New discipline alternatives include a Reality Therapy Room (in-school suspension) and an "early-leaver" program.

***During the current school year, it was estimated that Central had students from nearly 50 countries throughout the world, including large populations from Southeast Asia and Central America.***

- A Shadowing Project allows interested students to “shadow” the principal to better understand the problems, concerns and complexities of managing Rhode Island’s largest urban high school.
- A Government and Law Magnet Program is jointly run by Central and the University of Rhode Island. Promoting staff development, writing and reviewing curriculum, and evaluating testing procedures for government teachers are among the collaborative efforts.
- An Open-Door Policy allows the community, staff and students to drop in informally and discuss issues with the principal.
- The Central Parents Advisory Committee involves parents in regular meetings with school staff members.
- An improved curriculum offers students a new array of academic, vocational and cultural courses. Examples include the “Far Eastern Studies Course,” “SAT Preparation Course” and “High-Tech/Business Simulation Center.”
- Direct school involvement in several community projects includes school membership in the Providence Chamber of Commerce and principal membership in advisory committees of the Urban Education Center, Young Volunteers of Rhode Island and the Wiggins Village Tenants Association. The University of Rhode Island also uses the Central High campus to teach business classes to Cambodian refugees, and the Community College of Rhode Island uses Central as its inner-city campus.
- Central is represented on community minority committees and parent/student seminars are conducted, with assistance from the Urban Field Center at the University of Rhode Island, on a variety of post-secondary education, communications and discipline topics.

Additionally, the improvements achieved by Central High School have been recognized by five awards from the private sector, which has contributed further to a positive school climate:

- The 1982 Ford Foundation City High School Recognition Award — Central was one of 114 schools to receive \$1,000 in recognition of its continued improvement in urban education.
- The 1983 Ford Foundation Award — Central was one of 50 schools nationwide to receive \$20,000 to augment its positive urban education projects. The award monies support a variety of school/community programs, including the Parent Volunteer Corps, which makes daily contacts with the home regarding attendance, class cutting and academic problems. A parent/community coordinator is provided to act as an advocate for parents to support them and act on their behalf when they are not able to be present themselves.

- The 1984 Champlin Foundation Grant — Central received \$50,000 based on its record of improvement to establish a micro-computer lab.
- The 1984 Carnegie Foundation Grant — Central received \$3,000 to experiment with the “school-within-a-school” concept involving flexible scheduling and multiperiod classes.
- The 1985 Champlin Foundation Grant — Central received \$50,000 to upgrade its science laboratory.

### *Interagency collaboration*

Central works with the business sector in several ways. Speakers are invited into classrooms, students participate in off-campus community business internships, and staff members participate as members in local business and civic groups. Central works with parents and community members through its regular advisory group meetings and by publicizing and encouraging use of its Open-Door Policy. The school works with higher education staff members on collaborative educational projects.

### **DeKalb County School System**

3770 North Decatur Road  
Decatur, Georgia 30032  
404/297-1200

### *Background and objectives*

In 1975 the United States Supreme Court held (*Goss v. Lopez*) that students were entitled to certain due process rights when accused of any misbehavior that could result in the loss of 10 or more days of school. In keeping with this decision, the DeKalb County Board of Education began to develop a uniform districtwide discipline system. Designed to protect the due process rights of the district's 80,000 students, the discipline system was implemented in 1978 and has focused on those procedures outlined in *Goss v. Lopez*.

After a decade in operation, the discipline system has received a favorable response from students, teachers, administrators and parents. Students are aware of what is expected and of what to expect. The system is presented as a model of discipline that promotes equity, fairness and responsibility.

### *Program description*

The major features of the discipline system include:

- A school-based, computerized, uniform reporting system provides a profile of each school's discipline problems, including the time and location of offenses. This enables the Board of Education to focus specific attention on those problem areas.

***“Students in school, as well as out, are persons under the Constitution. They are possessed of fundamental rights which the State must respect, just as they themselves must respect their obligations to the State.”***

This system provides pre- and post-data for new discipline strategies.

- A Student Evidentiary Hearing Committee appointed by the superintendent conducts administrative hearings to determine the guilt or innocence, the severity of the offense and the disciplinary action warranted in cases involving the possible suspension or expulsion of a student. The committee may impose a variety of penalties.
- A Due Process Manual was developed to assist administrators of the systemwide discipline program.
- Staff development workshops, presentations and credit courses are conducted pertaining to discipline. Topics range from classroom management to legal issues in school discipline.
- Incidents are prevented as a result of a discipline system developed around due process and promoting mutual respect. The discipline pamphlet issued to all students states, “Students in school, as well as out, are persons under the Constitution. They are possessed of fundamental rights which the State must respect, just as they themselves must respect their obligations to the State.” (United States Supreme Court, *Goss v. Lopez.*)

#### *Interagency collaboration*

The successful implementation of the discipline system entails a great deal of cooperation between individual schools and the County Board of Education. Although this particular program is operating entirely within the school system, the County Board of Education is committed to the philosophy of interagency collaboration and even states in its letterhead: “The School Cannot Live Apart From the Community.”

#### **Ditmas Junior High School Law Program**

700 Cortelyou Road  
Brooklyn, New York 11218  
718/941-5450

#### *Background and objectives*

The Ditmas Junior High School Law Program was initiated in September 1980 through the efforts of social studies teachers Lois Zarka and Carol DiStefano. The teachers developed the program after participating in a course sponsored by the Board of Education and the Brooklyn Bar Association. They patterned the curricula after a Law Studies Program at Northpoint High School in Long Island, New York, that is supervised by Thomas O'Donnell. Initially, 72 ninth-graders and 30 eighth-graders participated in the program.

*Program description*

Ninth-grade students at Ditmas Junior High participate in Mentor, a law-related education program sponsored jointly by the New York Alliance for the Public Schools Inc. and the Federal Bar Council, in cooperation with the Board of Education of the City of New York. Attorneys visit classrooms, students visit law firms and they attend court together. Ditmas was one of three area junior high schools chosen to participate in this program. The firm of Finley, Kumble, Wagner, Heine, Underberg and Casey is the school's sponsor. Other features of the Mentor program include:

- The forensic science component increases students' understanding and application of the physical sciences by requiring them to collect and analyze evidence from a simulated crime scene. The forensic department at Ditmas was the recipient of a Special State Legislative Grant during the 1985-86 school year.
- Mock trials are conducted weekly in two classrooms that are each equipped with a judge's bench and a jury box. Students act as lawyers and participate in jury selection using procedures gained from visits to criminal court and the state Supreme Court.
- Students raised \$400 to refurbish the classrooms that are used for the mock court proceedings.
- Lectures by the Suffolk County Police and Sheriff's Departments help students understand police work and the law.
- Students, hosted by the staffs of the police and sheriff's departments, visit the minimum security prison at Yaphank.
- Students take visits to new citizen "swearing in" ceremonies.
- Workshops are sponsored by the school for teachers who wish to implement similar classes. Specialized curricula have been developed for grades 7-9 with instruction incorporated into social studies (grades 7-8) and English (grade 9).

*Interagency collaboration*

Joint efforts by the New York Alliance for the Public Schools, the Federal Bar Council, the Board of Education and the Suffolk County Police and Sheriff's Departments have made this a successful program. The Legal Society of New York, Brooklyn District Attorney's Office, Brooklyn Jail and the 66th Police Precinct have sent representatives to instruct Ditmas students.

***Through the Mentor program, hundreds of lawyers have played a significant role in New York City schools.***

### **Mentor**

180 Maiden Lane, Suite 3600  
New York, New York 10038  
(Written inquiries only)

#### *Background and objectives*

The Mentor program was created by Thomas W. Evans, a lawyer in private practice and chairman of the education committee of the President's Advisory Council on Private Sector Initiatives. The Mentor program began in 1983 as a pilot project involving five high schools and five law firms. During the 1987-88 school year, 28 public schools were being sponsored by 28 law firms. Program goals include increasing student awareness of the U.S. legal system, the impact of law on a student's life, student rights and responsibilities, and legal career opportunities. Mentor programs have been developed in other cities throughout the country as well.

#### *Program description*

Mentor pairs junior high and high schools with law firms. The program stimulates academic achievement and excellence in all fields of study and encourages better student citizenship and respect for the law. Specific activities include:

- Lawyers from the Mentor firm make an initial visit to the school with which they are paired.
- Students visit and tour the law firm, concluding with lunch in the conference room.
- Students make field trips to the federal and state courts. Lawyers from the firm serve as guides and, after court, host debriefing luncheons at the law firm with the students.
- Each paired firm and school develop elective activities such as legal writing, computer research or lawyer visits to the classroom.

A handbook may be obtained at no cost by writing to the project coordinator.

#### *Interagency collaboration*

The Mentor program is a joint endeavor of the New York Alliance for the Public Schools, Federal Bar Council and New York City Board of Education. Through the Mentor program, hundreds of lawyers have played a significant role in New York City schools. Additional Mentor programs are being developed in the fields of advertising, engineering, education and computers.

**Herman K. Ankeney Junior High**

4085 Shakertown Road  
Beavercreek, Ohio 45430  
513/429-7567

*Background and objectives*

Ankeney Junior High opened in 1969 during a period of national and local student unrest. Staff turnover at the school was high. Additionally, its proximity to Wright Patterson Air Force Base gave the school an international mixture of highly mobile students. School relations with the media were poor. Seventy percent of the adults in the community did not have children in school and Ankeney suffered from a negative public image.

Making the commitment to turn the situation around, Ankeney's staff implemented changes. The school is now described as having a "very disciplined climate which is child-centered and academically oriented." During the 1983-84 school year, the suburban junior high school of approximately 900 students was selected by the United States Department of Education for inclusion in its Secondary School Recognition Program. Ankeney also has received the Award for Democracy in Education from the Freedom Foundation.

*Program description*

Recognizing that overall school discipline is paramount to a good learning environment, the school adopted several strategies designed to improve the school climate and student behavior, as well as to improve community relations:

- A merit/demerit system was developed by a discipline committee composed of students, teachers, parents, principals and counselors. Teachers issue demerits when students break a rule (minor infractions, not criminal offenses) and merits when a student performs one-half hour of service for the school. Merits are used to delay or prevent a suspension, which is the consequence for each 10 demerits accumulated. Students with merits may earn a certificate and trip at the end of the year.
- Community merits may be earned by students for one hour of unpaid community service. A community merit cancels out a demerit. The system gives students the opportunity to get involved in the community in a positive way. Examples of community service projects include doing chores for the elderly, cleaning vacant lots or distributing campaign literature.
- A Saturday Alternative Program (S.A.P.) was added to take the place of most out-of-school suspensions. The program allows students to be responsible for their behavior without losing

school time to suspension. S.A.P. meets 20 Saturdays each year and employs two certificated teachers.

- A school historian assembles a news file of articles about the community activities of students, providing the school with a profile of student accomplishments and community participation. The school sends news releases to publicize school activities, and student accomplishments are recognized over the school intercom.
- An attendance officer is available to assist or retrieve students who are excessively absent.
- Community involvement in Ankeney Junior High has increased. This is due in part to improved relations between the school and the news media. Because a majority of community residents do not have school-aged children, their main source of information about the school is the local paper.

Successful strategies that have been employed to develop a positive working relationship with the press and community include:

- Regular news releases and photographs are submitted to the local paper about school activities, ie., student food drives, staff and student awards, and sports events. Reporters are regularly invited to the school to see "what is right with education."
- The parent-teacher organization is active. Volunteers provide tutorial and clerical assistance, and parents participate on the discipline, education and sports committees. Workshops orient and assist parent volunteers.
- Non-parent community members are encouraged to visit and participate in school activities. Senior citizens are annual guests for a special program and meal. The Chamber of Commerce officially recognizes an outstanding educator, and the Optimist Club sponsors a public speaking contest. The Rotary Club hosts a professional day during which students spend a day with a professional person in the community. Dayton Power and Light provides programs and speakers for the science department.

#### *Interagency collaboration*

The school encourages community involvement with many businesses and service clubs. In addition to providing guest speakers, Dayton Power and Light sponsors an energy fair with Ankeney students participating. The school also works closely with local support groups such as the Children's Mental Health, Children's Services Board and Greene County Juvenile Court.

**Seattle Public School District**

815 Fourth Avenue North  
Seattle, Washington 98109  
206/281-6000

*Background and objectives*

The Seattle Public School District was encountering community complaints about a lack of discipline in the schools at a time when the public sought to counteract the perceived permissiveness of the past 20 years. Seattle's inner-city schools also were suffering from a negative image resulting from desegregation orders.

The school district began developing the outline of a discipline code, seeking to incorporate the latest research in juvenile delinquency prevention, particularly theories of disruptive behavior. After discussion and community involvement, the school district identified more than 30 areas of concern. These were reduced to 19 major issues that were addressed in the discipline code.

*Program description*

The discipline code clearly distinguishes between school misconduct and crime. The school board developed policies in all major issue areas, including absenteeism and truancy, elimination of corporal punishment, substance abuse, homework, health care and safety, and school climate. Along with discipline code regulations, the district has established alternative schools for those students who have difficulty in the traditional classroom. These schools are also for students who have returned to school after dropping out.

To serve truants, the school district provides work training programs. A program also has been developed for pregnant teens who are truant or drop out. A policy was established requiring a 2.0 grade point average (GPA) for participation in school activities. In addition, intervention programs in grades 7-12 have been established to help all students maintain at least a 2.0 GPA.

*Interagency collaboration*

Community members, parents and professionals from the field of juvenile justice helped develop the discipline code at community seminars. The school board sought public awareness and support of the new policies through a major media campaign utilizing the district's radio station. PIPE (Private Initiatives in Public Education) is a business/community partnership initiated by the Seattle Chamber of Commerce.

*Community members, parents and professionals from the field of juvenile justice helped develop the discipline code at community seminars.*

**Project S.M.A.R.T.**

Victim Services Agency  
50 Court Street  
Brooklyn, New York 11201  
718/858-9070, extension 220

*Background and objectives*

The School Mediators' Alternative Resolution Team Program — better known as Project S.M.A.R.T. — trains students, parents and school personnel to mediate disputes between students, students and parents, and students and teachers. Sponsored by the Victim Services Agency, the program began in 1983 at William Cullen Bryant High School. Other New York City schools now in the program are Horace Greeley Junior High School, Taft High School, Eastern District High School and Prospect Heights High School.

Students are taught skills such as listening, critical thinking and problem-solving that can be used in resolving their own conflicts or those of their peers. Mediation provides the entire school community — students, faculty and parents — with a forum for constructive dialogue and problem-solving.

*Program description*

Project S.M.A.R.T. consists of four basic service components:

- classroom seminars designed to generate campuswide interest in mediation and to recruit mediators and cases;
- the training of students, parents and faculty interested in becoming mediators;
- the mediation of intra-student, intra-family and student-teacher conflicts by those who successfully complete the training; and
- follow-up on all mediated cases to discuss ongoing problems.

Since the program began, more than 230 students and 64 adults have completed S.M.A.R.T.'s 24-hour training course, and more than 6,300 students have attended classroom seminars on mediation and non-violent problem-solving. S.M.A.R.T. mediators have helped resolve more than 775 disputes.

Suspensions for fighting have dropped dramatically at each of the schools. The schools' disciplinary deans now refer all student disputes not involving weapons, drugs or injuries to mediation.

*Interagency collaboration*

Each school has a project coordinator employed by Victim Services Agency, a non-profit human service agency. Other program funding is provided by the New York City Youth Bureau and the New York City Board of Education.

---

## Bibliography

Anderson, Carolyn S. "The Search for School Climate: A Review of the Research." *Review of Educational Research* 52, 3 (Fall 1982):368-420.

Barnett, Martha W., Chairperson. *Report to the American Bar Association House of Delegates, Section of Individual Rights and Responsibilities — Corporal Punishment in Schools*. Chicago, Illinois: American Bar Association, August 1984.

Bennett, Sherrin A. *Something More Than Survival: A Student Initiated Process for School Climate Improvement*. Lafayette, California: Center for Human Development, 1978.

Bernstein, Basil. "Education Cannot Compensate for Society." *New Society* 387:344-347.

Binkley, Mike, and Anton, Roger. "Creating a Positive School Climate." *Thrust* 13 (April 1984):27-31.

Brookover, Wilbur B., et al. "Elementary School Social Climate and School Environment." *American Education Research Journal* 15:552-565.

California Department of Justice. *Law in the School: A Guide for California Teachers, Parents and Students*. Sacramento, California, 1984.

Clark, Frank J. *Improving the School Climate: Operations Notebook 19*. Burlingame California: Association of California School Administrators, 1977.

Clifton, William C. "Student Discipline and the State's Responsibility." *Is That Really Fair?* Edited by William F. Lincoln and Sandra L. Enos. Washington, D.C.: The National Institute of Education, 1978.

Coleman, James S., et al. "Equality of Educational Opportunity." Washington, D.C.: U.S. Government Printing Office, 1966.

Coleman, James S.; Hoffer, Thomas; and Kilgore, Sally. *High School Achievement — Public, Catholic and Private Schools Compared*. New York: Basic Books, Inc., 1982.

Cuervo, Amalia G., ed. *Toward Better and Safer Schools*. Alexandria, Virginia: National School Boards Association, 1984.

Denardo, Norman. "Objective Discipline." *Thrust*, September 1984, pp. 11-26.

DiPrete, Thomas; Muller, Chandra; and Shaeffer, Nora. *Discipline and Order in American High Schools*. Washington, D.C.: U.S. Department of Education, National Center for Education Statistics, 1981.

Doak, E. Dale. "Organizational Climate: Prelude to Change." *Educational Leadership* 27 (January 1970):367-71.

Edmonds, Ron. "Effective Schools for the Urban Poor." *Educational Leadership* 37 (1979):15-29.

Elliot, D.S., and Voss, H.L. *Delinquency and Dropouts*. Lexington, Massachusetts: Lexington Books, 1974.

Farrington, D.P. "Delinquency Begins at Home." *New Society* 21:495-497.

Feldhusen, John F. "Behavior Problems in Secondary Schools." Washington, D.C.: U.S. Department of Health, Education and Welfare, National Institute of Education, October 1978.

Fishman, Anne. *Turning the Corner: How to Improve the Secondary School Experience*. Providence, Rhode Island: Central High School, 1983.

Friedman, Robert H., and Hyman, Irwin. "An Analysis of State Legislation Regarding Corporal Punishment in the Schools." A paper presented at the National Institute of Education Conference of Corporal Punishment in the Schools, February 18-20, 1977, Washington, D.C.

Fox, Robert S., et al. *School Climate Improvement: A Challenge to the School Administration*. Englewood, Colorado: C.F. Kettering, Ltd., 1973.

Gallup, Alec M. "The Gallup Poll of Teachers' Attitudes Toward the Public Schools." *Phi Delta Kappan* 65 (October 1984):97-107.

Gallup, Alec M., and Elam, Stanley M. "The 21st Annual Gallup Poll of the Public's Attitude Toward the Public Schools." *Phi Delta Kappan* 71 (September 1989):41-54.

Garibaldi, Antoine M., ed. *In-School Alternatives to Suspension: Conference Report*. Washington, D.C.: U.S. Government Printing Office, 1979.

Gillespie, Judith, et al. *School Environment Handbook*. Bloomington, Indiana: Indiana Department of Public Instruction, 1979.

Glasser, William. *Schools Without Failure*. New York: Harper and Row Publishers, Inc., 1969.

Glenn, Beverly, and McLean, Taylor. *What Works? An Examination of Effective Schools for Poor Black Children*. Cambridge, Massachusetts: Center for Law and Education, 1981.

Glenn, Beverly. *Effective Schools for Poor Children: A Parent Handbook*. Cambridge, Massachusetts: Center for Law and Education, 1982.

Gonzales, Louis D. *School Climate: 180° Turn — Negative to Positive*. Los Angeles, California: Office of the Los Angeles County Superintendent of Schools, 1984.

Gray, Sandra T. "How to Create a Successful School/Community Partnership." *Phi Delta Kappan* 65 (February 1984):405-409.

Hartman, Catherine. "Beyond Effective Schools." *New Designs for Youth Development* 5 (July/August 1984):9-12.

Hentoff, Nat. "Corporal Punishment in the Schools: Discipline or Child Abuse?" *Washington Post*, September 11, 1984.

Howard, Eugene R. *School Discipline Desk Book*. West Nyack, New York: Parker Publishing Company, Inc., 1978.

Jencks, Christopher, et al. *Inequality: A Reassessment of the Effect of Family and Schooling in America*. New York: Basic Books, 1972.

Keefe, James W., and Jenkins, John M., eds. *Instructional Leadership Handbook*. Reston, Virginia: National Association of Secondary School Principals, 1984.

Joyce, Bruce; Hersh, Richard H.; and McKibbin, Michael. *The Structure of School Improvement*. New York: Longman Inc., 1983.

Levine, Daniel U.; Levine, Rayna F.; and Eubanks, Eugene E. "Characteristics of Effective Inner-City Intermediate Schools." *Phi Delta Kappan* 65 (June 1984):707-711.

Magett, Dorothy L., Chairperson. *Seattle Public Schools Discipline Procedures Handbook*. Seattle, Washington, 1982.

Mayer, G. Roy, and Butterworth, Thomas W. *Constructive Discipline: Building a Climate for Learning*. Los Angeles, California: Office of the Los Angeles County Superintendent of Schools, 1983.

McCormick, Kathleen. "These Tried-and-True Alliances Have Paid Off for Public Schools." *American School Board Journal*, October 1984, pp. 24-26.

McPartland, J.M., and McDill, E.L. *Violence in Schools*. Lexington, Massachusetts: Lexington Books, 1977.

Miles, Matthew B., et al. "The Extent of Adoption of Effective Schools Programs." *Review of Effective Schools Programs, Vol. II*. Washington, D.C.: U.S. Department of Education, 1983.

Moles, Oliver C. "Trends in Interpersonal Crimes in Schools." Paper presented at the annual meeting of the American Educational Research Association, Montreal, Canada, 1983.

National Commission on Excellence in Education. *A Nation at Risk: The Imperative for Educational Reform*. Washington, D.C.: U.S. Government Printing Office, 1983.

National School Resource Network. *Resource Handbook on Discipline Codes*. Cambridge, Massachusetts: Gelgeschlager, Gunn and Hain Publishers, Inc., 1980.

National School Safety Center. *Educated Public Relations: School Safety 101*. Malibu, California: Pepperdine University Press, September 1986.

New York State Department of Education, Student Advisory Committee; Olson, Laurie; and Moore, Melinda. *Student View on the Quality of Teaching: A Manual for Student Involvement*. Oakland, California: Citizen's Policy Center, 1984.

Pink, William T. "Schools, Youth and Justice." *Crime and Delinquency* 30 (July 1984):451-453.

Plowdin Report. "Children and Their Primary Schools." London, England: HMSO, 1967.

Polk, K., and Schafer, W. E. *Schools and Delinquency*. Englewood Cliffs, New Jersey: Prentice-Hall, 1972.

Rutter, Michael, et al. *Fifteen Thousand Hours*. Cambridge, Massachusetts: Harvard University Press, 1982.

Santa Monica-Malibu Unified School District. *Improving School Climate*. Santa Monica, California, 1984.

Sizer, Theodore R. *Horace's Compromise: The Dilemma of the American High School*. Boston, Massachusetts: Houghton Mifflin Co., 1984.

Stoops, Emery; Rafferty, Max; and Johnson, Russell E. *Handbook of Educational Administration*. Boston, Massachusetts: Allyn & Bacon, 1981.

Tagiuri, R. "The Concept of Organizational Climate." *Organizational Climate: Exploration of a Concept*. Edited by R. Tagiuri and G.H. Litwin. Boston, Massachusetts: Harvard University, Division of Research, Graduate School of Business Administration, 1968.

Thomas, M. Donald. "What Are the Skills? The Nature of Leadership in Public Education." *NAASP Bulletin*, October 1982, pp.71-77.

United States Department of Education. *The Nation Responds: Recent Efforts to Improve Education*. Washington, D.C.: U.S. Government Printing Office, 1984.

United States Senate, Subcommittee on Education, Arts and Humanities. "Restoring Classroom Discipline." Washington, D.C.: U.S. Government Printing Office, March 15, 1984.

Weckstein, Paul. *School Discipline and Student Rights. An Advocate's Manual*. Cambridge, Massachusetts: Center for Law and Education, 1982.

Weckstein, Paul. *Model Code of Student Rights*. Cambridge, Massachusetts: Center for Law and Education, 1975.

White, Charles, ed. *Building Bridges to the Law*. Chicago, Illinois: American Bar Association, 1981.

Zakariya, Sally Banks. "Compare and Contrast the Proposals of the Pre-eminent Education Reformers." *The American School Board Journal* 171, 9:29-31, 44.

## Appendix

### Assessment Survey-A School Climate Check List

<i>Student morale</i>	<u>Yes</u>	<u>No</u>
1. Students feel what they are learning is important and will help them in their personal lives.	_____	_____
2. Students are proud of their school.	_____	_____
3. Student attendance is good.	_____	_____
4. The various student social and/or racial groups (cliques) communicate with one another, respect one another and work together.	_____	_____
5. Students and staff participate in problem-solving and school-improvement activities.	_____	_____
6. There is a feeling of trust, caring and mutual respect among teachers and students.	_____	_____
7. Students feel they can talk to at least one staff member about personal problems.	_____	_____
8. Most students participate in school social activities.	_____	_____
9. Students are familiar with, and are held accountable to, codes of conduct.	_____	_____
 <i>Student achievement</i>		
10. All students at all skill levels are challenged, encouraged and expected to do well.	_____	_____
11. Students value the opinions of their teachers.	_____	_____
12. Students have an opportunity to demonstrate positive skills and talents.	_____	_____
13. Information about school and community resources, to help with specific problems, is made available and used by students.	_____	_____
14. Staff members model the behavior they wish to see in students.	_____	_____
15. Students are programmed into classes commensurate with their abilities.	_____	_____
16. Students receive prompt feedback about their performance on assignments.	_____	_____
17. Staff members are available for, and students are encouraged to seek, assistance outside of class time for their academic pursuits.	_____	_____
 <i>Teacher morale</i>		
18. Staff members are proud of the school.	_____	_____

- |   | <u>Yes</u> | <u>No</u> |
|---|------------|-----------|
| 19. Staff members exhibit a sense of cohesiveness, trust and acceptance among themselves.   | _____      | _____     |
| 20. Teachers feel their input on policy planning and implementation is encouraged and accepted by the administration.                         | _____      | _____     |
| 21. Appropriate in-service training is provided regularly.  | _____      | _____     |
| 22. Teachers are involved in, and have input into, in-service training.   | _____      | _____     |
| 23. Certificated and classified staff members communicate well with one another and work together for the benefit of the students and school. | _____      | _____     |
| 24. Staff members know their efforts are supported by school and district administration.   | _____      | _____     |
| 25. Teachers feel they are in control in their classrooms and are confident that site administrators will back them up.                       | _____      | _____     |
| 26. Teachers are comfortable with students.   | _____      | _____     |
| 27. Teachers feel good about what they are doing.   | _____      | _____     |

*Administration*

- |   |       |       |
|---|-------|-------|
| 28. The administration provides sufficient knowledge and training for teachers in handling discipline problems.                 | _____ | _____ |
| 29. The administration provides strong leadership.  | _____ | _____ |
| 30. The administration is an effective support service to the classroom teacher.  | _____ | _____ |
| 31. The administration provides the staff with a working knowledge of district goals and school-site goals in curriculum areas. | _____ | _____ |
| 32. The administrative staff works as a team, rather than as a group of individuals.  | _____ | _____ |
| 33. The administration has made a serious attempt to balance the racial and ethnic composition of the school community.         | _____ | _____ |

*Curriculum*

- |  |       |       |
|--|-------|-------|
| 34. Alternative programs are available to assist the gifted as well as the slow learner.   | _____ | _____ |
| 35. Staff members accurately diagnose student academic and social needs.   | _____ | _____ |
| 36. Special programs, such as those for the educationally handicapped and physically handicapped, are understood and supported by the total staff. | _____ | _____ |

	<u>Yes</u>	<u>No</u>
37. Special help is available for students with special needs.	_____	_____
38. Counseling staff members are involved in actual counseling, not just performing clerical duties.	_____	_____
39. The curriculum reflects the ethnic, racial and sexual composition of the community.	_____	_____
40. Teachers express and demonstrate a concern for, and commitment to, student achievement.	_____	_____
41. Staff members develop curricular activities and create a learning environment to help students establish goals.	_____	_____
42. Adequate resource materials are readily accessible to teachers.	_____	_____
43. Curriculum combines academic and social learning skills.	_____	_____
44. Standards of excellence cross all departments. For example, proper English skills also are required in social studies classes.	_____	_____

#### *Discipline*

45. There is a set policy of discipline, such as a student handbook, that is distributed to and discussed with students.	_____	_____
46. Behavior problems are recognized and resolved promptly.	_____	_____
47. School staff members know the difference between criminal violations and discipline incidents. Discipline problems are handled by the school; criminal violations are handled by law enforcement.	_____	_____
48. Appropriate penalties are given for violations of the discipline policy.	_____	_____
49. Conflict in the school is dealt with constructively and all contributing factors are evaluated.	_____	_____
50. The safety of other students is a consideration when resolving discipline incidents.	_____	_____
51. There are resources to resolve conflicts that include student participation.	_____	_____
52. Alternatives to referrals, suspension and expulsion are built into the discipline policy.	_____	_____
53. Rules are fairly and consistently applied to all students.	_____	_____
54. There is strict adherence to and enforcement of school rules by the total staff.	_____	_____

- |  | <u>Yes</u> | <u>No</u> |
|--|------------|-----------|
| 55. Discipline serves to teach expected behavior, as well as to provide punishment for inappropriate behavior. | _____      | _____     |
| 56. Classroom management policies exist and are followed by all staff members.                                 | _____      | _____     |
| 57. Discipline problems are handled by every staff member, not just the administration.                        | _____      | _____     |

*Safety*

- |  |       |       |
|--|-------|-------|
| 58. A plan with adequate campus supervision is operating to reduce vandalism.                                  | _____ | _____ |
| 59. The school has a litter prevention program.  | _____ | _____ |
| 60. The school is designed with crime prevention in mind, such as minimum entry points and proper landscaping. | _____ | _____ |
| 61. There are no areas on the school campus where students are apprehensive about their physical safety.       | _____ | _____ |
| 62. There is some type of on-site advisory committee, which includes students.                                 | _____ | _____ |
| 63. There is no graffiti on the school buildings.  | _____ | _____ |
| 64. Fights and/or gang activity are unusual occurrences.   | _____ | _____ |
| 65. Students can carry money without fear of physical harm or threats by other students.                       | _____ | _____ |
| 66. Fire and intrusion alarm systems are functioning properly.   | _____ | _____ |

*Community*

- |  |       |       |
|--|-------|-------|
| 67. A "Neighborhood Watch" program is in place, and neighbors are committed to calling law enforcement when suspicious or illegal behavior is occurring. | _____ | _____ |
| 68. Local law enforcement officials whose beat encompasses the school know and communicate with both youth and staff.                                    | _____ | _____ |
| 69. The community feels a sense of pride and ownership in the school.  | _____ | _____ |
| 70. Parents are involved in school planning for campus safety.   | _____ | _____ |

*Adapted from the California Office of the Attorney General. Alternatives to Vandalism. Sacramento, California, 1983.*

## Assessment Survey-B The Discipline Context Inventory

The eight factors (lettered A-H in the survey below) make up the living curriculum of the school; they convey to everyone in the school "how we behave around here." They show how an individual fits into the school every minute of the day, how he or she will be rewarded and how to behave to receive those rewards. Improving discipline in a school can best be achieved by examining these eight factors and by taking action to make them cause the behavior desired.

### Introduction

This inventory is neither a "scorecard" nor an objective test. It is a working guide for use by school personnel, students and parents to analyze programs and to identify problem areas they may wish to work on to reduce disruption and to improve discipline in their schools.

### Directions

Circle a number to rate your school on a scale of 0 to 5, with a rating of 0 indicating that the statement is not at all true of your school and a rating of 5 indicating that the statement is clearly true of your school.

- A. *The way people work together for problem-solving and decision-making.* Generally, more open and widespread participation is related to fewer disruptive behaviors and greater feelings of responsibility among teachers and students.
1. Faculty meetings are for staff development and problem-solving. 0 1 2 3 4 5
  2. Faculty members communicate concerns about district policies to central administration and modify those policies for their students' benefit. 0 1 2 3 4 5
  3. A sense of direction and mutual purpose is shared among a significant number of staff, students and, to some extent, parents. They can describe goals and achievements in specific, understandable terms. 0 1 2 3 4 5
  4. The school district central administration expects problems to be solved by local staff and community members. 0 1 2 3 4 5
  5. Problems do not fester; they are identified and resolved. The attitude, "What can we do?" replaces the attitude, "It can't be done." 0 1 2 3 4 5
  6. The school district provides time and consultants

- to aid in solving problems. 0 1 2 3 4 5
7. Adults in the school recognize their own responsibilities for handling situations or for solving problems that affect themselves or the students. 0 1 2 3 4 5
8. A large number of the staff is involved in planning and in implementing school activities. Participation is high and widely distributed. 0 1 2 3 4 5
9. Staff members and students feel that the school belongs to them and that they can make a difference in it. 0 1 2 3 4 5
10. Staff members exhibit a sense of accomplishment, giving a positive tone to the climate of the school. 0 1 2 3 4 5
11. Staff members recognize their own problems and don't take them out on the students. 0 1 2 3 4 5
12. Staff members communicate openly and frequently with one another about significant educational matters. 0 1 2 3 4 5
13. Staff members are relaxed and not afraid of their students. 0 1 2 3 4 5
14. Staff members know how to prevent discipline problems caused by adults, by school procedures or by the school organization. 0 1 2 3 4 5
- B. *The distribution of authority and status.* Generally, when there are fewer barriers to communication, more involvement in exercising authority and fewer status differences, the result is a more widespread sense of responsibility and a greater commitment among staff and students.
1. Status differences among various staff groups are eliminated. 0 1 2 3 4 5
2. No one ignores problems, refuses to do what needs to be done or says, "It's not my job." 0 1 2 3 4 5
3. Administrators' expectations are clearly communicated. 0 1 2 3 4 5
4. Staff members generally agree on what principals, teachers, aides, etc., are expected to do in given circumstances. 0 1 2 3 4 5
5. Teachers are able to communicate concerns, questions or constructive ideas to "superiors." 0 1 2 3 4 5
6. Each person accepts criticism from those who receive his/her services. 0 1 2 3 4 5
7. School secretaries, aides, custodians, bus drivers and other school staff members participate in faculty meetings and in-service sessions. 0 1 2 3 4 5

- 
8. Parents participate in classroom and school activities and are represented at most faculty meetings and in-service sessions. 0 1 2 3 4 5
9. Teachers help one another solve problems rather than criticize other teachers or students. 0 1 2 3 4 5
10. Responsibilities and "territories" are shared and respected; people are not possessive nor are they fearful that someone will "take over" their job, space or materials. They say "our school" and "our students," not "mine." 0 1 2 3 4 5
11. Status differences among student groups that segregate or limit communications are eliminated. 0 1 2 3 4 5
- C. *Student belongingness.* Students feel that the school serves their needs, is a safe and happy place to be, treats them as valued individuals and provides ways in which student concerns are treated fairly. When students feel supported and are involved in the life of the school, fewer disruptions or irresponsible behaviors will occur.
1. Students participate in solving the problems of the classroom and the school. 0 1 2 3 4 5
2. A large number of the students are involved in planning and implementing the school's activities. Students feel that the school belongs to them and that they can make a difference in it. 0 1 2 3 4 5
3. Students exhibit a sense of accomplishment, giving a positive tone to the climate of the school. 0 1 2 3 4 5
4. Teachers know the names of students, not only those in their classrooms but others in the school. 0 1 2 3 4 5
5. Students take responsibility for enforcing the agreed-upon rules and procedures with their peers and with teachers and administrators. 0 1 2 3 4 5
6. When making school policy decisions, the educational growth of students takes priority over concerns such as adult convenience, pleasing superiors, saving face or maintaining tradition. 0 1 2 3 4 5
7. Students take responsibility for their actions. 0 1 2 3 4 5
8. Students are included as members of the school. 0 1 2 3 4 5
9. Students' work is displayed in classrooms, display cases, corridors and cafeterias. 0 1 2 3 4 5
10. Students are involved in planning school decorations. 0 1 2 3 4 5
11. Students feel responsible for keeping the school environment attractive and clean. 0 1 2 3 4 5

12. Students may use the facilities freely as long as there is consideration for other students and for adults. 0 1 2 3 4 5
13. When necessary, basic needs of students from poor families are met through whatever resources are available without "spotlighting" them. 0 1 2 3 4 5
14. Children with special problems are diagnosed and help is provided in a manner that does not stigmatize them or separate them from normal school activities. 0 1 2 3 4 5
15. Teachers respect the students' language and culture. 0 1 2 3 4 5
16. Each student has at least one contact on the faculty who serves as an advocate. 0 1 2 3 4 5
17. Students believe the school offers what they need and they find school interesting. 0 1 2 3 4 5
18. All students are included in all classroom and school activities, regardless of sex, race, religion, socioeconomic status or academic ability. 0 1 2 3 4 5
- D. *Procedures for developing and implementing rules.* Generally, when rules are made by the people involved and when expectations are clearly understood, there are fewer transgressions. The more nearly rules are derived from principles of learning and of normal human behavior, the more effective they are. The more the school operates like a community, as opposed to a prison or army, the fewer the problems.
1. Rules and expectations are clearly defined, stated and communicated so that people know what to do. 0 1 2 3 4 5
2. Students are involved in rule-making. 0 1 2 3 4 5
3. Rules are made by the people who must enforce them. 0 1 2 3 4 5
4. Disciplinary techniques are used to teach positive ways of behaving, not to punish or to teach blind obedience. 0 1 2 3 4 5
5. A few good rules are made and enforced rather than having too many rules that are not enforced. 0 1 2 3 4 5
6. Rules are enforced in a way that will reinforce the behavior that is desired. 0 1 2 3 4 5
7. Unenforceable rules are eliminated. 0 1 2 3 4 5
8. Due process is applied before punishment. 0 1 2 3 4 5
9. Students and others are assumed to be innocent until proven guilty of infractions. 0 1 2 3 4 5
10. A complete description of what transpired during

- any discipline incident is expected from adults and students. 0 1 2 3 4 5
11. Teachers are not assumed to be "right" all the time. 0 1 2 3 4 5
12. Students are not punished if such punishment has no positive educational outcome. 0 1 2 3 4 5
13. Rules and disciplinary procedures are examined and revised to prevent negative educational outcomes such as lower self-respect, dislike for school, lack of responsibility for one's own behavior, sense of helplessness, etc. 0 1 2 3 4 5
14. Rules apply only to behavior that has a direct effect on the school or classroom, not to matters that are trivial or highly personal. 0 1 2 3 4 5
- E. *Curriculum and instructional practices.* A curriculum which emphasizes learning that is appropriate for the students served and that provides a greater variety of materials and activities tends to reduce discipline problems.
1. The curriculum is viewed as more than the content to be taught in subject-matter classes. 0 1 2 3 4 5
2. Administrative procedures are related to the explicit curriculum goals of the school. 0 1 2 3 4 5
3. Field trips, outside speakers and other good practices are seen as ordinary teaching methods that teachers may utilize without excessive administrative procedures. 0 1 2 3 4 5
4. A variety of teaching styles is evident among faculty members. 0 1 2 3 4 5
5. Individual differences and differences in learning styles are respected and accommodated. 0 1 2 3 4 5
6. Students may transfer from one teacher to another, or one program to another, depending upon their learning styles and their particular educational goals. 0 1 2 3 4 5
7. Teachers choose the methods and materials that serve best for achieving their goals. 0 1 2 3 4 5
8. Teaching methods and instructional materials build on what the student already knows. 0 1 2 3 4 5
9. Students have choices in schedules and assignments. 0 1 2 3 4 5
10. The curriculum includes teaching students how to make choices. 0 1 2 3 4 5
11. Teaching methods provide for active learning and are neither boring nor frustrating. 0 1 2 3 4 5

12. Counterproductive practices are changed or eliminated as speedily as alternatives can be developed. 0 1 2 3 4 5
13. The student-teacher ratio is reasonably low. 0 1 2 3 4 5
14. Playgrounds, school buses, cafeterias and hallways are viewed as places where students learn; teachers design and implement a curriculum for those areas. 0 1 2 3 4 5
15. Students are frequently involved in learning activities outside the classroom and in the community. 0 1 2 3 4 5
16. Some failure is accepted as a natural part of learning and growth. 0 1 2 3 4 5
- F. *Processes for dealing with personal problems.* Generally, practices that help people cope with their lives outside the school and with problems that are not directly related to school matters stimulate greater commitment to participate fully in the work of the school.
1. Before rushing to solve a problem, people clarify whether there is a problem and define what it is. 0 1 2 3 4 5
2. Individual and cultural differences are respected and valued and are allowed to be openly expressed in the school. 0 1 2 3 4 5
3. Staff and students recognize that even "good" students and "good" teachers have problems. 0 1 2 3 4 5
4. Students are permitted to have "low days." 0 1 2 3 4 5
5. Teachers are permitted to feel angry, to have "low days" or to make mistakes. 0 1 2 3 4 5
6. Staff members understand student behavior and avoid causing problems when there are none. 0 1 2 3 4 5
7. Students do not try to manipulate adults. 0 1 2 3 4 5
8. Minor student misbehavior does not warrant undue attention. 0 1 2 3 4 5
9. Teachers are able to discern when a discipline incident is over. 0 1 2 3 4 5
10. Staff members do not get distracted from what they want the students to do. 0 1 2 3 4 5
11. Teachers do not escalate small problems into larger ones. 0 1 2 3 4 5
12. Staff and students express and discuss problems as they arise rather than tucking them away. 0 1 2 3 4 5
13. If a person has a problem with another, he or she discusses it directly with that person. 0 1 2 3 4 5
14. When dissatisfied with their own performance, people focus on growing and do not punish

- themselves for being short of perfection. 0 1 2 3 4 5
15. Both students and staff can give tangible examples of growth that have occurred in adults or students. 0 1 2 3 4 5
16. All people in the school recognize and celebrate (even in small ways) when one of them achieves something good. 0 1 2 3 4 5
17. People help one another in ways that help them to become independent. 0 1 2 3 4 5
18. Teachers and students admit feelings that are causing them to behave inappropriately, but they do not blame others for their own feelings. 0 1 2 3 4 5

G. *Relationships with parents and other community members.*

Generally, more open relationships with parents and other community members result in better achievement and behavior in the school. Close home and community contacts also enhance the students' sense of belonging.

1. Teachers and administrators frequently participate in groups and organizations within the community that can offer support to students and to the school. 0 1 2 3 4 5
2. Teachers know the students, parents and community and frequently interact with each of them. 0 1 2 3 4 5
3. Teachers know the neighborhood, the street names, the stores and the places of entertainment of their students. 0 1 2 3 4 5
4. Teachers recognize they may hold stereotypes about some students and parents as individuals and try in various ways to break down those stereotypes. 0 1 2 3 4 5
5. Teachers and other school personnel visit students' homes frequently. 0 1 2 3 4 5
6. Each teacher visits the home of every homeroom student (or advisee) early in the school year before any problem can arise. 0 1 2 3 4 5

H. *Physical environment.* Generally, environments that are pleasant for adults and students to work in and that reflect the interests, culture and values of students encourage good behavior. The more the school environment looks like a workshop, a library, a restaurant or a conference center and less like a prison or institution, the fewer the problems.

1. Meeting and social areas are not crowded. 0 1 2 3 4 5
2. Adequate materials are available and they are

- |  |             |
|--|-------------|
| organized for easy access and cleanup.   | 0 1 2 3 4 5 |
| 3. The physical environment is well-organized in order to permit a maximum of student independence and behavior.         | 0 1 2 3 4 5 |
| 4. Necessary space and adequate facilities are available for student work.   | 0 1 2 3 4 5 |
| 5. The school plant is well-planned to accommodate easy movement within and between classrooms and large group areas.    | 0 1 2 3 4 5 |
| 6. The cafeteria has places where small groups can sit, eat and talk quietly together.                                   | 0 1 2 3 4 5 |
| 7. There are several "nooks and crannies" where individuals may be alone to think, read or work.                         | 0 1 2 3 4 5 |
| 8. Places are designed where small groups can work together without having to talk loudly to be heard.                   | 0 1 2 3 4 5 |
| 9. The school is attractive and inviting.  | 0 1 2 3 4 5 |
| 10. Staff members feel responsible for keeping the school environment attractive and clean.                              | 0 1 2 3 4 5 |
| 11. Staff and students are able to analyze "trouble areas" in the environment and make provisions to solve the problems. | 0 1 2 3 4 5 |
| 12. The environment is well-designed acoustically.   | 0 1 2 3 4 5 |
| 13. Traffic patterns are analyzed to eliminate causes of discipline.   | 0 1 2 3 4 5 |

*Using the inventory for problem-solving meetings*

The *inventory* may be used with faculty or parent groups to identify problems in the school and to establish goals for solving those problems. The following procedure is suggested, but adaptations may be needed to suit local conditions.

- Step 1: Begin by selecting only one of the eight sections in the *inventory* for rating your school. The selection may be made by asking the faculty to rank the eight areas to determine which one they would be most interested in working on or which one most needs attention. The principal or administration also could decide which area needs the most attention. Sometimes a recent incident in the school might help determine on which area to focus.
- Step 2: Involve staff members early in the process prior to the faculty meeting. Through informal conversations with staff members, present the ideas in the *inventory* and get their suggestions about which ones need attention. Distribute an open-ended questionnaire soliciting the staff's ideas about the major causes of discipline problems (or

- other problems) in the school. Distribute evidence of problems such as achievement test results, suspension rates or incidence of some disruptive behavior, then use the *inventory* as suggested to get at the causes.
- Step 3: Use only one of the eight sections of the *inventory* for the content of a staff meeting. Staff meetings are too short to deal with the entire range of items included in the *inventory*. The staff might be overwhelmed or become frustrated if presented with too many items.
- Step 4: Divide the staff into groups of five, consisting of members from different departments, different status levels (include non-certified personnel), different grade levels, different sexes and different races. Have them seat themselves in circles to facilitate direct eye contact and discussion.
- Step 5: Give each group sheets of chart paper, a marker and some masking tape for hanging the charts on the wall.
- Step 6: Have each person rate the school on all of the items in the section that has been selected for the meeting. The rating can be done before the meeting starts, at the beginning of the meeting or just after the small groups have been assigned in Step 4. The rating should be done individually and with no discussion among the group.
- Step 7: Ask the staff to read the introduction to the *inventory* so they will understand why they are doing the next steps. Encourage the staff to discuss the introduction to clarify their thinking or to voice their disagreements. Try to get all staff members to participate and avoid letting one person act as the "expert" on the *inventory* and the rationale behind it.
- Step 8: Have each group discuss their ratings, then list on the chart the three or four items that have the highest ratings and the three or four items that have the lowest ratings in their group.
- Step 9: Have the whole staff look at the charts showing the strongest and weakest items for the school, then the whole group should develop a list of the items that most need attention. Items for the list should be selected through consensus, not through voting. Consensus requires that all disagreements are stated, heard and considered, and that all participants agree before final action is taken. Voting divides groups into "winners" and "losers" and reduces feelings of responsibility for carrying out the decision. For more on consensus, consult "Techniques to Facilitate Consensus," in R.A. Schmuck and P.J. Runkel, *Third Handbook of Organization Devel-*

*opment in Schools*, Palo Alto, California: Mayfield Publishing, 1982.

Step 10: Using the list developed by the whole group (Step 9), have each individual categorize the items by using the following questions:

1. Which items do you think you cannot do anything about?
2. Which items do you not want to do anything about?
3. Which items do you think you could do something about and want to do something about?

Step 11: Using the answers to question No. 3 above, assign committees to work on one item with the intention of improving it. Have each group submit a work plan at the next faculty meeting showing what will be done, by whom and on what timeline. Use the procedures suggested in Figure 1.

Step 12: Have each group report progress at each faculty meeting. Provide suggestions and help as indicated. Discuss progress informally between meetings.

*Copyright 1982, William W. Wayson. Permission granted to the National School Safety Center to reprint in the School Safety Check Book. Any school that wishes to reproduce this inventory for use in local staff development programs is granted permission to do so.*

**Figure 1**

Goal: \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

Indicators of success: \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

Activities necessary for reaching goal: \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

Resources needed to do Activities: \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

Time when activity has to be done: \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

Person responsible for doing job: \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

## Assessment Survey-C

# Community Survey

Hello, this is \_\_\_\_\_  
I'm a volunteer calling for the \_\_\_\_\_ Public Schools.

We're conducting a telephone survey to find out what people think about the public schools in \_\_\_\_\_. We'll be calling almost four hundred randomly selected citizens during this study, and would like just a few minutes of your time for some important questions.

1. First, how many years have you lived in the \_\_\_\_\_ School District?
  - 1 less than one year
  - 2 1 - 3 years
  - 3 4 - 6 years
  - 4 7 - 10 years
  - 5 11 or more years
  
2. Do you have any children of school age or younger?
  - 1 yes
  - 2 no (SKIP TO QUESTION 5)
  
3. Do your children attend public schools or private schools?
  - 1 public
  - 2 private/parochial
  - 3 both public and private/parochial
  - 4 attends preschool program (SKIP TO QUESTION 5)
  - 5 preschool child- does not attend school (SKIP TO QUESTION 5)
  
4. What grades are they in?
  - 1 elementary (K-6)
  - 2 junior high/middle school (7-9)
  - 3 high school (10-12)
  - 4 college

5. Students are often given the grades A, B, C, D and E to show how well they're doing in school. Suppose the \_\_\_\_\_ schools were graded in the same way. All things considered, what grade would you give \_\_\_\_\_ schools, A, B, C, D or E?

- 1 A
- 2 B
- 3 C
- 4 D
- 5 E
- 6 can't say/no response

6. People think of different things when they hear the words, "\_\_\_\_\_ schools." What comes to your mind when you hear those words... "\_\_\_\_\_ schools"?

7. In your opinion, what's the single biggest problem facing the \_\_\_\_\_ schools?

- 1 lack of proper financial support/finances
- 2 poor curriculum/poor standards
- 3 use of drugs/substance abuse
- 4 lack of discipline
- 5 teachers/teaching methods
- 6 parents' lack of interest
- 7 students' lack of interest
- 8 declining enrollment
- 9 miscellaneous \_\_\_\_\_
- 10 can't say/no response

8. Now, on the positive side, is there anything about the \_\_\_\_\_ schools that you think is particularly good?

- 1 school staff
- 2 curriculum
- 3 extracurricular programs
- 4 communication
- 5 adult/community education
- 6 vocational/career education
- 7 variety of programs/services
- 8 everything is good
- 9 miscellaneous \_\_\_\_\_
- 10 can't say/no response

9. Where do you get most of your information about the \_\_\_\_\_ schools?

- 1 students/my children
- 2 school employees
- 3 newspapers
- 4 other adults/friends
- 5 radio
- 6 television
- 7 school newsletters/publications
- 8 other \_\_\_\_\_
- 9 can't say/no response

10. What kinds of school information would be most interesting to you?

- 1 my child's progress
- 2 curriculum
- 3 teacher/teaching methods
- 4 school rules/policies
- 5 financial information
- 6 extracurricular activities
- 7 special services available
- 8 everything
- 9 other \_\_\_\_\_
- 10 can't say/no response

Next I'm going to read a list of programs and services offered by the \_\_\_\_\_ schools.  
As I read each item, tell me if you think the schools should give it more attention, less attention,  
or about the same amount of attention.

	More	Less	Same	Can't say/ no response
11. reading...should the _____ schools give more, less or about the same emphasis to reading?	1	2	3	4
12. writing skills and grammar	1	2	3	4
13. mathematics	1	2	3	4
14. training students for jobs	1	2	3	4
15. helping students choose careers	1	2	3	4
16. preparing students for college	1	2	3	4

	More	Less	Same	Can't say/ no response
17. extracurricular programs like sports, bands and clubs	1	2	3	4
18. science	1	2	3	4
19. drug and alcohol abuse	1	2	3	4
20. adult and community education	1	2	3	4
21. foreign language	1	2	3	4
22. And, finally, computers...should the schools give more, less or about the same emphasis to teaching computer science?	1	2	3	4

23. Would you say that your most recent contact with the \_\_\_\_\_ schools was a positive or negative experience?

- 1 positive
- 2 negative
- 3 can't say/no response (SKIP TO QUESTION 25)

24. What was the nature of that contact? Was it a conference, a phone call, a visitation or something else?

- 1 principal contact
- 2 teacher contact
- 3 parent conference
- 4 school publication
- 5 phone call to school
- 6 speech by school employee
- 7 other \_\_\_\_\_
- 8 can't say/no response

25. Suppose for a moment you were a school board member. What one thing would you do to improve the \_\_\_\_\_ schools?

- 1 emphasize the basics
- 2 increase teacher accountability
- 3 increase discipline
- 4 improve teaching methods/practices
- 5 improve curriculum/standards
- 6 improve financial management
- 7 increase parent/citizen involvement
- 8 improve buildings/facilities/equipment
- 9 miscellaneous \_\_\_\_\_
- 10 can't say/no response

26. What could the \_\_\_\_\_ schools do for you personally...for example, can you name any program, service or training opportunity that would be helpful to you?

- 1 parenting programs/child care/helping parents to help kids learn
- 2 job training/skill enhancement
- 3 offer leisure/enrichment programs
- 4 adult education programs
- 5 family management programs
- 6 senior citizen programs
- 7 nothing/present programming fine
- 8 miscellaneous \_\_\_\_\_
- 9 can't say/no response

Next, I'm going to read you a list of statements about our public schools. After I read each one, please tell me if you tend to agree or disagree with the statement.

	Agree	Disagree	Can't say/ no response
27. Most students here like school.	1	2	3
28. Our schools emphasize reading, writing and arithmetic.	1	2	3
29. Our schools can be described as good places to learn.	1	2	3
30. Principals in our schools expect the best from teachers.	1	2	3
31. Students who have learning problems can get extra help in our schools.	1	2	3
32. When students graduate from our schools, most of them will know how to read, write and do arithmetic.	1	2	3

	Agree	Disagree	Can't say/ no response
33. Students in our schools are encouraged to do the best they can.	1	2	3
34. School employees in our community care about students.	1	2	3
35. Most classrooms in our schools are well disciplined.	1	2	3
36. Most parents believe our schools are doing a good job.	1	2	3
37. I am generally pleased with the quality of the schools in our community.	1	2	3
38. Teachers in our schools should assign more homework.	1	2	3
39. Generally speaking, our schools are run in an orderly manner.	1	2	3
40. Students in our public schools receive enough individual attention from teachers.	1	2	3

Finally, I have a few short questions to help us classify the opinions of people we're interviewing...

41. What do you do for a living?

- 1 professional, technical
- 2 farmer
- 3 management
- 4 clerical
- 5 sales
- 6 craftsman
- 7 industrial worker
- 8 housekeeper
- 9 service
- 10 laborer
- 11 student
- 12 homemaker
- 13 retired
- 14 unemployed
- 15 undesignated
- 16 can't say/no response

42. What was the last grade in school that you had an opportunity to complete?

- 1 elementary (K-6)
- 2 junior high/middle school (7-9)
- 3 some high school (10-12)
- 4 high school graduate
- 5 some college
- 6 Associate degree -- 2 year "community college"
- 7 college graduate
- 8 college post-graduate
- 9 can't say/no response

43. And, in what year were you born?

- 1 1960-62
- 2 1950-59
- 3 1940-49
- 4 1930-39
- 5 1920-29
- 6 1910-19
- 7 1909 or earlier
- 8 no response

That concludes our survey. Thank you for your help.

(Please Turn To Next Page.)

FOR INTERVIEWER ONLY

44. Sex of respondent

- 1 male  
 2 female

Interviewer name \_\_\_\_\_

Interview date \_\_\_\_\_

Length of interview \_\_\_\_\_

Telephone number \_\_\_\_\_

Verified by \_\_\_\_\_

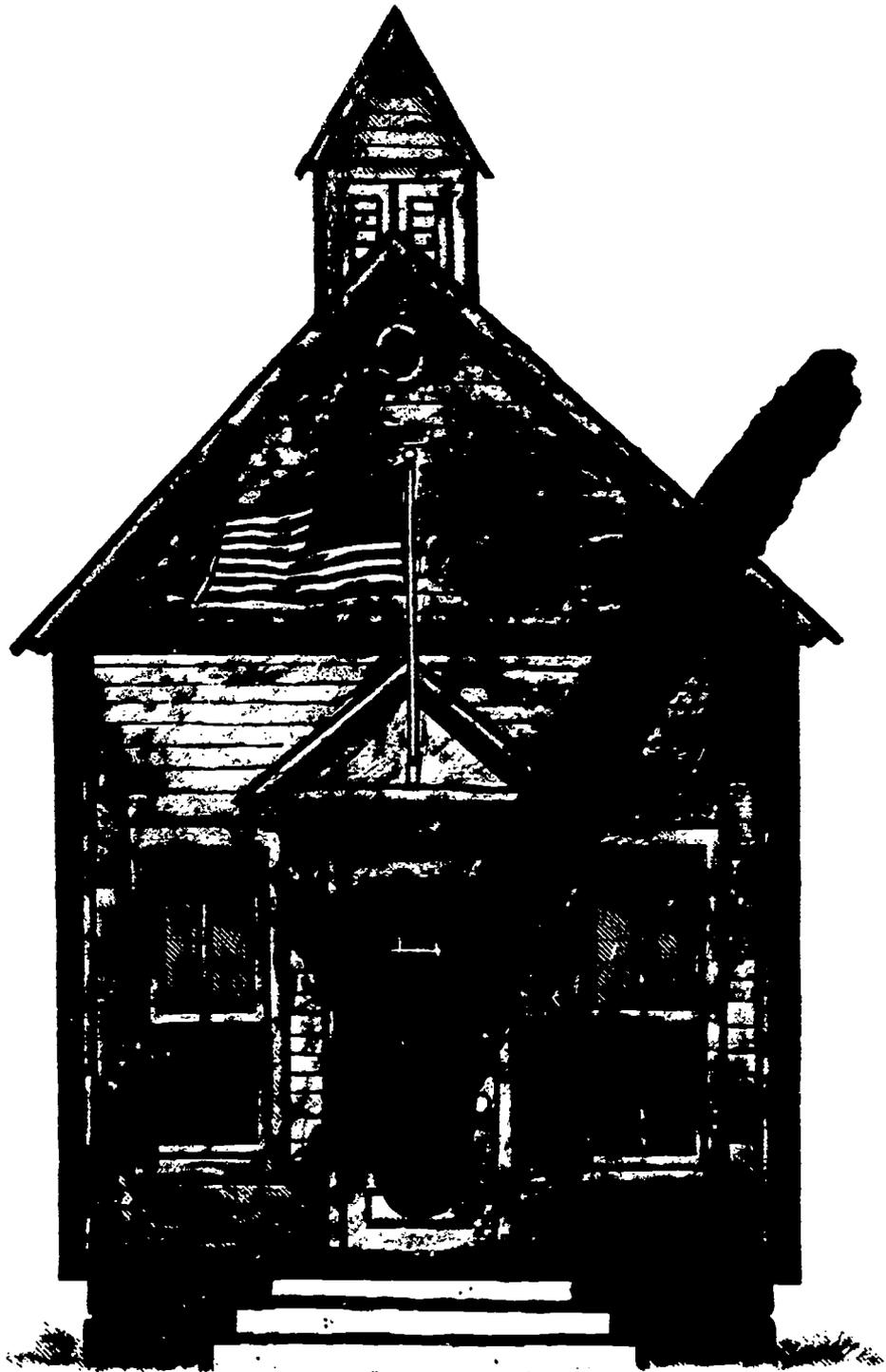
Copyright 1984. William J. Banach Associates, Inc. 21969 Cimarron, Romeo, MI 48065. All rights reserved. This survey document may be reproduced in its entirety for use by registered owners of **The Marketing Workbook**. No changes in the material are permitted. Reproduction must be by photocopy or offset printing and must carry this copyright notice. Agencies using this survey are required to send one copy of the survey results to the copyright holder.

---

## Chapter II

# School attendance

<b>The issues</b> _____	<b>66</b>
<b>Assessing the problems</b> _____	<b>70</b>
<b>Prevention strategies</b> _____	<b>71</b>
<b>Response strategies</b> _____	<b>74</b>
<b>Sample programs</b> _____	<b>79</b>
<b>Bibliography</b> _____	<b>89</b>
<b>Appendix I — Assessment surveys</b> _____	<b>92</b>
<b>Appendix II — Chicago Network program</b> _____	<b>94</b>
<b>Appendix III — Attendance policies</b> _____	<b>96</b>



## Chapter II

# School attendance

Compulsory education in America was first enacted in 1647 by the Pilgrim founders in Massachusetts. Today, every state and the District of Columbia have compulsory attendance laws that require students between certain ages to attend school. Still, on any given day, about one out of 10 elementary school students and one out of five high school students is absent from class.

While most student absences are for illness or other legitimate reasons, other factors affecting attendance include fear for personal safety delinquency, gang violence, drug abuse, poor school climate, home and family problems, the need to work, pregnancy, lack of interest in school, difficulty with English, low self-esteem and poverty. The dropout rate nationally is currently estimated at between 25 and 30 percent, with more than half of the students in some major cities leaving school before graduation.

The absentee student of yesteryear was often romanticized as a likable Huck Finn type who wiled away the day fishing. Today's truant is more likely to be a troubled or troublemaking youth who spends the day in unproductive, disruptive and sometimes criminal activities that affect the surrounding community. Many communities have begun anti-truancy programs that have drastically reduced daylight burglaries, auto thefts, thefts from businesses and shopping malls, and juvenile drug and alcohol offenses.

In a 1989 Gallup Poll, the American public identified "pupil lack of interest/truancy" as one of the most serious problems facing public schools. For the last five years, absenteeism (including truancy) has been ranked first or among the top concerns of principals surveyed in the annual membership poll of the National Association of Secondary School Principals. Absenteeism hurts the student, often leads to increased crime and delinquency, and reduces state financial support for schools. Everyone loses when students are not in school.

Some school districts are more successful than others in their efforts to keep students in the classroom. This chapter describes model programs and offers assessment methods as well as preven-

***Students who are gang members have been found to play a key role in acts of violence, threats and extortion on public school campuses. Youth gangs also are largely responsible for much of the school vandalism as well as for intimidating students and faculty.***

tion and response strategies. Sample surveys also are included.

#### **The issues**

Non-attendance refers to students who are truant, excessively tardy or the victims of *educational neglect* by parents who fail to enforce mandated attendance. Irregular attendance also may result from psychological problems that occur when a student dreads something about school life.

Seven percent of high school seniors reported they do not feel safe at school, according to the "High School and Beyond Study" conducted by the U.S. Department of Education. The 1978 *Violent Schools — Safe Schools* report to Congress found that students who have been attacked or robbed at school are three times as likely to be absent during the month following the incident. The study also found that 56 percent of these victimized students said they are afraid at school at least some of the time, and 18 percent reported being afraid most of the time. In a 1984 study by the National Association of Secondary School Principals, students surveyed said that one of their most serious concerns was a fear of other disruptive students such as bullies.

A fear of gangs was the reason most often given for leaving school in a study of Chicago dropouts, and, according to the 1986 report by California's State Task Force on Youth Gang Violence, many gangs are extending their area of control into the schools. Students who are gang members have been found to play a key role in acts of violence, threats and extortion on public school campuses. Youth gangs also are largely responsible for much of the school vandalism as well as for intimidating students and faculty.

Traditionally, gang members have high dropout rates. However, some of today's gang members are choosing to remain in school. According to a five-year study of gang and non-gang youths in Detroit by Michigan State University researcher Carl S. Taylor, these gang members see school as a good place to recruit new members and make drug deals.

National dropout rates have remained about the same for the past decade, with slightly less than three-fourths of all students having completed high school. The most recent statistics from the U.S. Department of Education estimate the dropout rate nationally at 28.9 percent for 1988. Dropout rates tend to be higher in the South and Southwest and in more densely populated areas such as New York City, Chicago and Washington, D.C. (Table 2-A lists a comparison of state dropout rates.)

Dropout rates are disproportionately higher for students from poor and minority families, with black and Hispanic students twice as likely as white students to leave school before graduation.

**Table 2-A**  
**State Dropout Statistics**

State	1988		1986		1982	
	Dropout Rate (percentage)	Rank	Dropout Rate (percentage)	Rank	Dropout Rate (percentage)	Rank
Alabama	25.1	29	32.7	12	36.6	6
Alaska	34.5	9	31.7	16	35.7	11
Arizona	38.9	4	37.0	5	36.6	6
Arkansas	22.8	35	22.0	37	26.6	29
California	34.1	10	33.3	11	39.9	3
Colorado	25.3	28	26.9	24	29.1	23
Connecticut	15.1	44	10.2	50	29.4	21
Delaware	28.3	19	29.3	19	31.8	18
District of Columbia	41.8	2	43.2	1	43.1	2
Florida	42	1	38.0	2	39.8	4
Georgia	39	3	37.3	3	35.0	13
Hawaii	30.9	14	29.2	20	25.1	34
Idaho	24.6	30	21.0	39	25.6	32
Illinois	24.4	31	24.2	31	23.9	37
Indiana	23.7	33	28.3	22	28.3	25
Iowa	14.2	47	12.5	47	15.9	50
Kansas	19.8	43	18.5	43	19.3	45
Kentucky	31	13	31.4	17	34.1	14
Louisiana	38.6	5	37.3	3	47.1	1
Maine	25.6	27	23.5	32	29.9	20
Maryland	25.9	25	23.4	33	25.2	33
Massachusetts	30	17	23.3	34	23.6	39
Michigan	26.4	23	32.2	15	28.4	24
Minnesota	9.1	51	8.6	51	11.8	51
Mississippi	33.1	12	36.7	6	38.7	5
Missouri	26	24	24.4	30	25.8	31
Montana	12.7	48	12.8	46	21.3	43
Nebraska	14.6	46	11.9	48	18.1	46
Nevada	24.2	32	34.8	10	35.2	12
New Hampshire	25.9	25	26.7	25	23.0	41
New Jersey	22.6	37	22.4	35	23.5	40
New Mexico	28.1	21	27.7	23	30.6	19
New York	37.7	6	35.8	7	36.6	6
North Carolina	33.3	11	30.0	18	32.9	16
North Dakota	11.7	49	10.3	49	16.1	49
Ohio	20.4	41	19.6	41	22.5	42
Oklahoma	28.3	19	28.4	21	29.2	22
Oregon	27	22	25.9	27	27.6	26
Pennsylvania	21.6	38	21.5	38	24.0	36
Rhode Island	30.2	16	32.7	12	27.3	28
South Carolina	35.4	7	35.5	9	36.2	10
South Dakota	20.4	41	18.5	43	17.3	47
Tennessee	30.7	15	32.6	14	32.2	17
Texas	34.7	8	35.7	7	36.4	9
Utah	20.6	40	19.7	40	25.0	35
Vermont	21.3	39	22.4	35	20.4	44
Virginia	28.4	18	26.1	26	26.2	30
Washington	22.9	34	24.8	28	23.9	37
West Virginia	22.7	36	24.8	28	33.7	15
Wisconsin	15.1	44	13.7	45	16.9	48
Wyoming	11.7	49	18.8	42	27.6	26
United States average	28.9		28.5		30.5	

Sources: "High School Dropout Rates," USA Today, February 26, 1988, and "The Nation's Report Card," Fortune, Special Issue, Spring 1990.

However, the Education Commission reports that since 1970 the dropout rate for black students has decreased nationally, while the rate for white students has edged up. In rural and suburban schools, dropout rates have either increased or remained about the same since 1965.

About 14 percent of the males and 9 percent of the females who drop out of school enter the General Equivalency Diploma (GED) program to earn a diploma in lieu of high school graduation. Others enter training programs or "find themselves" in other ways. However, about two-thirds of those who drop out have totally given up on school. (Table 2-B lists reasons given by students for leaving school before graduation.)

Dropouts and excessively truant students not only fail to fully

**Table 2-B**  
**Reasons Cited by 1980 Sophomore Dropouts for**  
**Leaving High School Before Graduation: Spring 1982**

<i>Reasons</i>	<i>Percentage agreeing*</i>
<b>School-related:</b>	
School was not for me	33.1
Had poor grades	33.0
Couldn't get along with teachers	15.5
Expelled or suspended	9.5
Didn't get into desired program	6.1
School grounds too dangerous	2.3
<b>Family-related:</b>	
Married or planned to get married	17.8
Had to support family	11.1
Was pregnant	10.9
<b>Peer-related:</b>	
Couldn't get along with students	5.6
Friends were dropping out	4.6
<b>Health-related:</b>	
Illness or disability	5.5
<b>Other:</b>	
Offered job and chose to work	19.5
Wanted to travel	6.8
Wanted to enter military	4.3
Moved too far from school	3.6

\*Researchers surveyed 2,289 dropouts. Respondents were permitted to cite more than one reason for leaving school.

*Source: Adapted from Valena White Plisko, The Condition of Education, 1984 Edition, Washington, D.C.: National Center for Education Statistics, 1984.*

develop their academic skills, but they also may fail to acquire critical social skills such as the capacity to understand and follow directions or plan for the future. This results in reduced employability, diminished professional opportunities and lowered life satisfaction. (Table 2-C shows the average annual earnings for different levels of educational attainment.)

Society also pays a price for dropouts through increased demands on the social service and criminal justice systems. According to the National Dropout Prevention Fund, more than half of the nation's prisoners are dropouts. Research by the Stanford Education Policy Institute indicates that dropouts cost the country approximately \$228 billion a year in unemployment and welfare benefits, lost tax revenues and additional law enforcement expenses. A Rand Corporation study showed that 99 percent of women who drop out and become heads of households will require assistance from Aid to Families with Dependent Children.

Evidence has shown that up to two-thirds of the daylight burglaries nationwide are done by juveniles who are truant from school when the offenses occur. Programs that have successfully reduced truancy and crime include:

- Police in West Covina, California, targeted truancy in that city in 1981, resulting in a 51.2 percent decrease in daytime crime.
- Truancy squads were established in 1985 by the Police Department in Houston, Texas. Burglaries in the area around Alief Elsik High School had dropped by almost 70 percent, and the

***Evidence has shown that up to two-thirds of the daylight burglaries nationwide are done by juveniles who are truant from school when the offenses occur.***

**Table 2-C**  
**Mean Earnings in 1984 of Persons 18 Years Old and Over**  
**by Years of School Completed**

Years of school completed	All workers		Year-round full-time workers	
	Male	Female	Male	Female
<i>Total</i>	\$20,452	\$10,742	\$25,884	\$16,036
<i>Elementary: Total</i>	12,301	6,350	16,315	10,436
Less than 8 years	11,219	5,803	15,272	9,798
8 years	13,550	6,860	17,392	10,976
<i>High School: Total</i>	16,888	9,056	21,594	13,751
1 to 3 years	13,093	5,790	18,575	11,808
4 years	18,016	9,561	22,312	14,076
<i>College: Total</i>	26,020	13,520	31,531	19,250
1 to 3 years	18,863	10,614	24,737	16,241
4 years	29,203	14,865	33,086	19,885
5 years or more	35,804	20,275	39,829	25,370

Source: Bureau of the Census, March 1985 Current Population Survey.

department's North Shepherd substation reported a 30 percent drop in daytime burglaries as well as a decrease in robberies and assaults within just months after the program began.

- Vacaville, California, reported a 35.4 percent decline in daytime residential burglaries in the year after Control Absenteeism Through Counseling Habituals (CATCH), a federally funded program operated through the Youth Service Unit at Vacaville High School, began during the 1983-84 school year.
- Daylight burglaries decreased 48 percent in the first year after the Stop and Cite Program, a comprehensive crime reduction and truancy intervention effort by the Department of Public Safety in Rohnert Park, California, began in 1979. (See the Sample Programs section in this chapter for more details.)

Schools with poor attendance may lose in other ways as well. Researcher Jackson Toby, writing in Volume 4 of *Crime and Justice*, indicates a relationship between teacher "burnout" and absenteeism. Toby suggests that teachers of students with high absentee rates may become discouraged and give up, either leaving the profession or becoming chronic absentees themselves.

### **Assessing the problems**

Some data on attendance conditions are available from school and district records. Usually it only takes staff time to extract attendance and dropout statistics, truancy reports and other information from existing files.

Assessments and surveys provide additional information about specific causes and individual school issues. The California School Boards Association has developed a 12-question mini-survey to determine if a review of the district attendance policy is needed. (See Assessment Survey-A, Appendix I.) School board members, district and site administrators, and others evaluating attendance problems may use the Check List for Assessing an Attendance Improvement Program (See Assessment Survey-B, Appendix II.)

An effective analysis of absenteeism requires complete and accurate enrollment and attendance statistics. The underreporting of student absences and dropouts concerns those working to keep America's young people in school. When Illinois legislators were confronted with instances of serious underreporting of the state's dropouts, they responded by enacting new laws that hold educators legally responsible and back it up by ordering a prison sentence for those convicted of falsifying attendance data. When legislation requires added responsibilities, lawmakers should consider providing schools with the additional funds needed to finance these increased services.

An effective program to address the dropout problem has been developed by Chicago's Network for Youth Services, a coalition of 30 youth- and family-serving agencies united to respond to this and related community issues. The Network's goal is to substantially increase the percentage of local students who graduate. To achieve this, students and faculty were asked why they believe students leave school before graduation. Survey results for one high school were tabulated. (See Chicago Network Program, Appendix II.)

When statistics and assessment data indicate the need for a new district attendance policy or campaign, administrators must determine if the focus must be on truancy, class cutting or dropouts. Policy revision should be districtwide to provide consistency. Also, because attendance policies increasingly are being challenged in court, a legal review of the new policy should be made before it is adopted. (Appendix III provides policy drafting guidelines and a carefully articulated and complete model attendance policy.)

### **Prevention strategies**

Schools are cracking down on tardy and truant students through high technology and stern punishments. A computerized phone system that dials the homes of all absent students has boosted attendance rates in several school districts where it has been introduced. Other schools are enforcing no-nonsense rules and punishments for chronic truants. For example, students may automatically lose credits after a prescribed number of absences in a semester.

Because attendance problems affect both home and community life, resolving the problems involves parents, community members, law enforcers, juvenile justice personnel and youth-serving professionals. Attendance behavior is learned, and early efforts should be used to deter the development of student absentee patterns. Initial efforts should be directed at students, parents and school staff. The following strategies are recommended:

- State regulations and the district attendance policy and procedures must be clearly explained and distributed to all students, parents and staff. A clear description of the tardy policy should appear in the student conduct code to be given to students and parents.
- School personnel, especially classroom teachers, should be trained in the importance and legal ramifications of enforcing attendance policies and procedures. Training may include methods for identifying and assisting *high-risk* students, techniques for efficient record keeping and facts about the financial impact of non-attendance on the school.
- Parent support is essential. Meetings, bulletins and other communications with parents should clearly explain the importance

***Policy revision should be districtwide to provide consistency. Also, because attendance policies increasingly are being challenged in court, a legal review of the new policy should be made before it is adopted.***

of regular attendance. Parents should be encouraged to schedule medical appointments after school hours and have family vacations correspond with school holidays and breaks. Parents should notify the school whenever their children are absent, and the school should notify parents and request their aid when absentee patterns begin.

- Parents or guardians should be notified of each absence rather than waiting until after the problem is beyond control.
- Students whose schoolwork has suffered because of attendance problems need opportunities for independent study or tutorial instruction.
- An annual attendance record review helps schools identify students with poor attendance patterns in previous years. When reviews are made before school opens, it enables staff members to schedule interviews at the beginning of the school year with students who have poor attendance records. Interviewers can discuss reasons for absences, apprehensions about school, the relationship between attendance and academic success, consequences of not graduating and ways to improve attendance. Weekly or monthly reviews with students who have attendance problems alert the staff when intervention is needed.
- Publicity campaigns, which enlist support from local print and electronic media, can help reduce absenteeism. (Table 2-D suggests "fillers" that school districts can request local print and electronic media to run.) The media also can be asked to run a monthly community report that describes the amount of revenue lost from unexcused absences. Generate student interest in good

**Table 2-D**  
**Sample Public Service Announcements**

- Do you know a child who does not attend school regularly? Please call your local school.
- The average child misses six days of school per year. If you know a child who misses many days, call your local school.
- Truancy is just the symptom; if your child is truant, get help. Call your local school.
- One out of 10 grade schoolchildren is absent on any given day. Is your child in school today?
- One out of five high school students is absent on any given day. Is your child in school today?
- Daylight juvenile crime can be decreased by more than 50 percent when a concerted community effort keeps children in school. Help keep children in school.
- Ninety percent of serious juvenile offenders begin as truants. Aren't you glad your child is in school today?

attendance through contests and campaigns to develop slogans and posters. Students with exemplary attendance records should be recognized at award assemblies, in school publications, and by personal letters of congratulations from the principal to both students and their parents.

- A variety of school attendance incentive programs can be implemented. Charts can be posted in classes or homerooms to display student attendance records.
- Special activities can be scheduled for Mondays and Fridays to discourage students from taking "extended weekends." Assemblies, class and athletic competitions, after-school dances and other extracurricular activities can be used to discourage absences. Similar activities for teachers and staff also can be implemented. When teachers are frequently absent, students tend to mirror the same absentee patterns.
- Expanding the elective courses offered by the school can promote interest for students with limited aptitude for the basic curriculum.
- The importance of regular attendance should be emphasized to students with long-term, non-contagious diseases such as asthma and diabetes.
- Site administrators can organize a school truancy prevention committee with a membership that includes school, parent, law enforcement and community representatives. This group could sponsor activities to promote good attendance, disseminate state and district attendance policies, and invite law enforcers to inform students of the legal response to truancy.
- To encourage attendance, Project "Earn and Learn" was developed by an Illinois intermediate school. Students participate in job counseling and supervised paid after-school jobs in the community. Eligibility for the program is based on satisfactory school behavior and attendance. Students work at a fixed rate for two hours daily. When a student does not meet specified attendance and behavior goals, teachers do not sign the student's job card. For each teacher approval missing from the card, authorized work time is reduced 15 minutes a day during the next week. Each missing signature results in a 12.5 percent loss in wages.
- Dropout prevention programs must address the special needs of students most likely to leave school before graduation. In primary grades the goal is a safe, no-risk classroom environment with a curriculum that includes activities to build self-esteem, develop problem-solving skills and encourage regular attendance.
- Junior and senior high counselors should help instructors iden-

***In some schools, volunteers spend time each day contacting the parents of all students not in school. Such efforts tell students and parents the school is concerned and will not ignore absences.***

tify and monitor potential dropouts and enlist the support and involvement of their parents.

### **Response strategies**

When attendance, truancy or dropout problems exist, the district must initiate efforts to interrupt and change unacceptable patterns.

- Individual or group counseling is needed for students with erratic attendance. Parents should be notified and offered support as well. Students and parents must be informed of laws mandating attendance.
- Truant students need an immediate response that makes it clear unexcused absences are not tolerated. In some schools, volunteers spend time each day contacting the parents of all students not in school. Such efforts tell students and parents the school is concerned and will not ignore absences. This system also serves as a preventive measure because other students know if they miss school, their parents will be notified. Many schools now use computerized phone systems to contact parents when their children are absent.
- Truant behavior requires immediate enforcement of the written school policy. Administrative options include in-school suspension and Saturday school assignment<sup>†</sup>. The first assigns truants to isolated classes, which removes them from peer social contact. Saturday school must be a structured, supervised, minimum day program and should include tutorial assistance to help students complete assignments missed during truancy, tardies or class cuts. This program infringes on a student's free weekend time and frequently is successful in modifying absentee behavior. (Table 2-E provides suggestions for in-service suspensions and Saturday schools.)
- Special curriculum or incentives may be needed to improve attendance. Independent study, tutorial, reduced day, homebound or self-contained classes are options. Withholding admittance into driver's education courses also may be an option. In an extreme situation, transfer to another school setting may be necessary to remove a student from peer situations contributing to absenteeism.
- Pregnant students may require alternative education programs that include secondary education instruction, job training and support services such as counseling, child care, health services and G.E.D. preparation.
- Adopt-A-Student or peer programs encourage better attendance. Teachers, students or community volunteers work with individual students to develop and promote attendance goals.
- New instructional units can involve students in developing and

**Table 2-E**  
**Implementation Tips for Special Attendance Programs**

*In-house suspension*

1. Operate the in-house suspension program five days a week, four hours each day, in a separate facility on campus.
2. Staff the program with either an aide working under the supervision of a dean or with a certificated staff member who can be assigned to the program permanently or on a rotating basis.
3. Try to obtain the assignments for students from their teachers for the period the students are assigned to the program.
4. Schedule class breaks at times that do not coincide with regular classroom breaks.
5. Assign students to the in-house suspension program if they have excessive tardies or class cuts (particularly after the lunch break).
6. Assign students to the in-house suspensions program in consultation with teachers and counselors who work with the students.

*Saturday school*

1. Operate the Saturday school for four hours of instructional time each Saturday for at least 25 weeks during the school year.
2. Consider staffing the program with an administrator or certificated staff person on an hourly contract.
3. Describe the program completely to parents and guardians.
4. Assign the student to the Saturday school after consultation with teachers and counselors who have worked with the student.
5. If possible, obtain assignments for students from their teachers for the time they are assigned to Saturday school.
6. Tightly structure the Saturday school curriculum and require students to complete all assignments before they are released from the program.
7. Send students home from Saturday school if they are tardy; reassign them to return the following week to complete their assignments.
8. Consider establishing a parent-student communication workshop as part of the required Saturday program and work with nearby colleges or universities in staffing the workshop.

*Source: School Attendance Improvement: A Blueprint for Action, California State Department of Education, Sacramento, California, 1983.*

enforcing attendance rules.

- A speakers' panel, composed of successful or well-known adults who themselves overcame attendance or dropout problems, can be formed to address student and community audiences on the social and economic consequences of such behavior.
- Provide students whose schoolwork has suffered because of attendance with opportunities for independent study or tutorial instruction.
- Students with high potential for dropping out can be referred to an interagency team that includes school and community mem-

*In some chronic truancy cases, juvenile court judges cite parents and students for contempt of court if the child refuses to attend school.*

bers. The team develops programs for individual students, encourages parent involvement, identifies any medical problems, and refers students to appropriate school and community agencies. When possible, the team also works to improve the student's home environment. (In California these teams are called Student Attendance Review Boards.)

- Interviews by a counselor can determine if excessive absences are related to psychological disorders, learning disabilities or family problems. These discussions can encourage school attendance and establish a plan for the absentee, truant or dropout to return to the academic environment.
- A buddy system, pairing the returnee with a student who has successfully re-entered school, is an effective policy.
- The Operation Stay-In-School program, which originated in Fresno, California, is now used in many communities. This truancy-reduction program is jointly operated by the school district and law enforcement agencies. To enforce compulsory school attendance laws, law enforcement officers stop unsupervised school-age students during school hours. Those students identified as truant are taken to a reception center where school personnel contact a parent, who must come to the center and return the student to school. (California Education Code, Section 58625, authorizes apprehended students to be taken to reception centers operated by the school district.) In areas where no reception center exists, students are taken to their school and parents are asked to come for a conference before the students are readmitted to regular classes. (Table 2-F describes procedures for stay-in-school programs.)
- In some instances, legal complaints against parents are necessary to return the student to school. (Table 2-G provides guidelines on when and when not to file complaints.) Truancy court and school district personnel can arrange a collaborative agreement to deal with habitual truants and their parents. In some chronic truancy cases, juvenile court judges cite parents and students for contempt of court if the child refuses to attend school.
- Educators and local law enforcers experiencing serious truancy problems can agree to a joint crackdown on truants and increased efforts to enforce truancy laws. These agreements should be well-publicized to students, parents and the community.
- In response to the needs of students who have legally quit school, educators can sponsor return-to-school workshops. School dropouts are invited to learn about increased employment and other benefits for graduates. Counselors describe ways the school will assist them in returning to school.
- When students feel required to leave school because of financial

**Table 2-F**  
**Operation Stay-In-School**

1. Arrange for school officials to meet with law enforcement and probation officials to develop the objectives, goals and procedures for Operation Stay-In-School.
2. Set up a reception center to receive out-of-school youths found by police officers.
3. Use newsletters, conferences, parent meetings (such as an open house), newspaper articles, and PTA programs and publications to ensure that parents are aware of the program and its purpose.
4. Notify students and staff members of the program and its operation by bulletins, brochures, assemblies and staff meetings.
5. Develop procedures to return students quickly to the regular program.
6. Identify with local law enforcement and probation departments the legitimate excuses for students to be off campus (for example, doctor or dentist appointments, ROP, work experience and independent study).

*Source: School Attendance Improvement: A Blueprint for Action. California State Department of Education, Sacramento, California, 1983.*

hardship, school districts can offer the regular day school curriculum in evening classes from 6 to 10 p.m. to accommodate daytime work schedules. Participation in evening instruction should be limited to students who need full-time employment, older students who have reached their fifth year of high school, those who have been out of school a substantial time, day students who are unable to cope with the length of the complete school day, and day students who have not succeeded in any other regular or alternative school programs.

- Workshops for parents of dropouts provide positive reinforcement to those supporting readmission. Parents learn about the adjustments students face when returning. Parents and re-enrolling students should be personally recruited to attend the workshops.
- Alternative education opportunities should be provided for students who are unwilling or unable to resume a traditional academic program. Vocational or skill centers, sometimes known as "second-chance" schools, teach returning students a trade as well as basic educational skills. Students graduating from these centers must meet academic requirements.
- Continuation schools offer another alternative educational environment for high school dropouts. Students usually have individualized instruction and learn at their own pace. While the learning environment is different than at the traditional school, students study the same basic courses, receive the same credits and must pass identical minimum academic skills tests to graduate.

**Table 2-G**  
**Suggestions About When To and When Not To File a**  
**Complaint Against Parents for Educational Neglect\***

*When to file:*

1. When the indifferent and neglectful attitudes and actions of the parent are the main reason for the student's illegal absences.
2. When the parent habitually gives illness as an excuse without proper verification.
3. When the parent willfully obstructs the student's school attendance. For example, frequently giving excuses such as being out of town, baby-sitting, running errands, watching the house, etc.
4. When the parent makes no effort to follow recommendations for solving problems or is uncooperative with the school.
5. When the child absents himself/herself from school and the parents are unable to control the child's attendance.
6. When the parent has been warned verbally and sent a formal warning notice stating the Compulsory School Attendance law but the student continues to be absent.

*When not to file:*

1. When the student has excessive absences and the parent is making an effort to follow your recommendations.
2. When a general education student is suspected of having mental, emotional or physical problems. Refer to the director of special education services for testing.
3. When the attendance worker has not investigated the case fully and has not talked with the parent(s). This may be waived if parent(s) refuses to talk with him/her or fails to return calls.

\*Note: This district policy was developed for Michigan schools in accordance with state and local laws. When developing similar policies, districts should comply with applicable state and local regulations.

*Source: READ: Resource Handbook for School Administrators. Oakland Schools, Department of Pupil Personnel Services, Pontiac, Michigan, 1984, pp. 76-77.*

### **Sample programs**

Since non-attendance harms both the school and community, cooperative programs involving school districts, community youth-serving agencies, law enforcers, juvenile courts and local businesses are being developed to address two major non-attendance problems — truancy and dropping out. (Note: Schools or organizations with programs that address student attendance issues are encouraged to submit a description of their program to the National School Safety Center. These programs will be reviewed for addition to the Center's clearinghouse resources.)

### **Network for Youth Services**

Education Task Force  
3600 W. Fullerton Avenue  
Chicago, Illinois 60647  
312/227-0007

#### *Background and objectives*

The Network for Youth Services was formed in Chicago to coordinate the efforts of more than 32 youth-serving community agencies. The Network focuses on Humboldt Park, West Town and Logan Square, neighborhoods with residents predominantly of Puerto Rican descent. Goals of the Network's education committee are to prevent dropouts and absenteeism and to promote quality education and the successful completion of high school. The education committee collects information on Chicago area schools, analyzes existing attendance and dropout policies and practices, and lobbies for changes that will improve the quality of education for students. The education task force also helps develop school programs and researches financing opportunities for educational improvements.

#### *Program description*

Members of the Network's education committee were concerned because they believed absence and dropout statistics in Chicago schools were being underreported. Through lobbying efforts, the group achieved a change in state law that now provides a uniform statewide attendance reporting system and makes it a criminal offense to misreport school attendance and dropout figures.

The committee developed and employed a school dropout survey (see Appendix II) to measure student and teacher views of why students leave school before graduation. Using this data, a school plan was developed that lists what caused the student to drop out, proposed school intervention and response strategies, and community agencies, services and programs that respond to each dropout

***The Stop and Cite Program was credited with reducing burglaries, vandalism and thefts.***

cause. The Network also has introduced attendance incentive programs into the Chicago schools and has promoted alternative school programs to keep students in school or return them to the classroom.

*Interagency collaboration*

The Network of Youth Services is a coalition of agencies in Chicago. It includes colleges, hospitals, churches, the YMCA and Boys and Girls Clubs, the Red Cross, and other youth-serving agencies and organizations. Through coordinated efforts, Network agencies evaluate youth, community and school needs to provide both direct and indirect support services.

**Stop and Cite Program**

Rohnert Park Department of Public Safety  
5200 Country Club Drive  
Rohnert Park, California 94928  
707/585-1122

*Background and objectives*

Begun in May 1979, the Stop and Cite Program is part of a comprehensive crime reduction and truancy intervention effort. The program is based on the assumption that truancy and juvenile crime are related problems. The Stop and Cite Program seeks to reduce these problems while increasing Average Daily Attendance (ADA) funds for schools.

*Program description*

The program stresses positive contact between police and students. Patrol officers issue *courtesy* citations to suspected truants during school hours. Two citations are issued without penalty, and students are returned to school to meet with a parent and vice principal. When a third citation is issued, the student is referred to appropriate community support services.

The program also provides a school resource officer on nine campuses. The officer provides information and counseling on drug abuse, runaways and other topics of student interest. Resource officers serve as formal classroom teachers and as informal friends on campus.

The community supports 90 Neighborhood Watch programs, and about 20 percent of the students' parents participate in Safe House Programs. The business community also assists by reporting suspected truants. The Stop and Cite Program was credited with reducing burglaries, vandalism and thefts. Estimated ADA funds recovered since the program began have exceeded \$1.5 million. In

addition, community savings from reduced crime loss in daytime burglaries, theft and vandalism are estimated at \$500,000.

#### *Interagency collaboration*

School personnel, the Rohnert Park Department of Public Safety, Probation Department and Youth Services join with mental health agencies and the business community in participating in the Stop and Cite Program.

#### **The Crossroads Program**

Peckham Vocational Industries, Inc.  
2822 N. Martin Luther King Jr. Blvd.  
Lansing, Michigan 48906  
517/323-2400

#### *Background and objectives*

The Crossroads Program is a community-based, comprehensive day treatment program for serious, delinquent Ingham County Probate Court wards between the ages of 15 and 18. Crossroads' goal is to reduce recidivism, improve social functioning, increase academic performance, maximize an individual's vocational and personal functioning, and provide job skills training for youths who have repeatedly failed in traditional settings. This unique program combines educational, social and vocational services at the work site. The process of the Crossroads Program is to eliminate criminal behavior and instill independent living skills to stabilize hard-to-serve youth for a successful transition into adulthood.

#### *Program description*

The program is highly structured to provide experiential learning, approximating employment and social situations of a competitive work environment. The individualized training plan sets objectives that gradually increase participants' role expectations. Educational services consist of classes that are smaller in size and structured to meet individual needs. Participants earn regular high school credit for the classes and vocational training.

#### *Interagency collaboration*

Through the combined efforts of Peckham Vocational Industries, Ingham County Probate Court, the Ingham County Board of Commissioners, and the Lansing School District, the Crossroads Program was designed as an alternative to long-term detention or residential placement. Services for participants are individually designed in conjunction with Ingham County Probate Court, the

Department of Social Services (which serve as referring agencies) and the Peckham Vocational Industries staff. With the support of the Lansing School District, a teacher, a teacher's aide and a special education consultant have been assigned to work exclusively with this program.

### **Truant's Alternative and Optional Education Program**

Illinois State Board of Education  
Remediation and Intervention Programs  
100 N. First Street, E228  
Springfield, Illinois 62777  
217/782-6035

#### *Background and objectives*

The Illinois State Legislature responded to the state's growing truancy problem by statutorily funding the Truant's Alternative and Optional Education Program. The state has allocated more than \$31 million since 1984 to fund these programs. More than 91,000 youths have been served at an average cost of \$350 per student.

When adopting this program, the state directed the education system to seek community and professional involvement to develop alternate teaching and learning programs that recognize individual differences. Lawmakers also stipulated that school and community resources should be used effectively, and students with special needs must have easy access to the modified instructional programs. Schools were advised to combine diagnostic and preventive services with alternative education programs to offer more *humane* treatment for students with serious personal and family problems.

#### *Program description*

School districts seeking funds for Truant's Alternative and Optional Education Programs must include prevention and diagnostic services to identify the causes of truant behavior, to focus on detection and intervention for young students, and to develop individualized education plans for students who now have — or who are likely to have — attendance problems. Schools are directed to use regional services when local resources do not meet student needs. Primary responsibility for pupil attendance remains with local districts, which are encouraged to develop alternative programs for truants. Acceptable interventions include guidance and counseling or programs involving parents, community groups, and state and local agencies. General assembly funds are to be used primarily for diagnostic services at the local and regional level.

*Interagency collaboration*

Most state-funded programs are administered by an Educational Service Region (ESR) that coordinates school district efforts with community services and serves as a liaison between schools and courts. The Truant's Alternative and Optional Education Program seeks to supplement and strengthen local school efforts and to complement, but not duplicate, the work of existing social service agencies.

**Lower Ninth Ward Truancy Center  
Orleans Parish School Board**

1616 Caffin Avenue  
New Orleans, Louisiana 70117  
504/943-0314

*Background and objectives*

The Orleans Parish Truancy Program has established three truancy centers in New Orleans since December 1979. These centers developed from recommendations by the International Year of the Child Committee, a group of concerned citizens, media representatives, parents, educators, social workers and members of the business community. The school district and police department cooperatively operate the centers. Out of approximately 2,000 cases handled by the centers each school year, less than 10 percent of the truants are repeat offenders. The small number of repeaters is viewed as an indicator of the center's effectiveness in truancy reduction.

*Program description*

In 1979 the New Orleans City Council passed an ordinance that made parents responsible for the school attendance of their children. Truancy centers were established, and police were directed to stop any child of school age who was not in school between 9 a.m. and 3 p.m. If truancy is suspected after a student is stopped and questioned by police, then the student is taken to a truancy center and given an intake interview by a social worker who seeks to identify the problems affecting attendance. When appropriate, the student is referred to other counseling or youth-serving agencies. The center provides supervised bus transportation to return students to school or home.

Monitoring, follow-up and interagency cooperation contribute to the program's success. Students receive and sign for a copy of the compulsory attendance laws. Parents are notified by mail or phone of the truancy problem and are advised of compulsory attendance laws. Staff members review the truant's school attendance records, hold parent conferences and make home visits, if needed. If par-

***If truancy is suspected after a student is stopped and questioned by police, then the student is taken to a truancy center and given an intake interview by a social worker who seeks to identify the problems affecting attendance. When appropriate, the student is referred to other counseling or youth-serving agencies.***

ents do not respond, they receive a registered letter stating what steps have been, and need to be, taken. If they fail to respond within 10 days, police deliver a summons and a hearing is set, usually within 24 hours.

#### *Interagency collaboration*

This program developed from proposals by the International Year of the Child Committee. The city council empowered police to act when truancy is suspected. The police department, school district, social workers, youth-serving agencies and center staff work cooperatively. A common truancy-related problem — a student's lack of clothing or shoes — also is addressed. Clothing donations from the community and new shoes from church groups are solicited, and centers distribute contributions to needy students.

### **Comprehensive Dropout Prevention Program**

Richmond Career Education Center  
2015 Westwood Avenue  
Richmond, Virginia 23230  
804/780-6022

#### *Background and objectives*

Richmond Public Schools recognized the high correlation between students who are habitually truant and who drop out of school. The district also was concerned with the lowered academic performance and increased daytime criminal involvement of truant youths. The Richmond Dropout Prevention Program was established to return out-of-school youths to school, to enforce the compulsory school attendance law and to reduce the dropout rate significantly.

Many of the program's guidelines came from the Dropout Prevention Advisory Committee, a group of concerned school and community members. Committee members have helped in developing, implementing, monitoring and evaluating the Comprehensive Dropout Prevention Program.

#### *Program description*

Students in grades K-12 who live within the Richmond city limits are included in this program. Parents, Richmond Public Schools, the Bureau of Police, the juvenile court, the Commonwealth Attorney's Office, and local businesses and merchants participate.

Three "Return-to-School" (recovery) officers are assigned to assist middle and high schools in encouraging students to return to school or remain in school. Officers make home visits, counseling parents and students and, where necessary, making recommendations for adjustments in the students' program of study.

Suspected truants are picked up by local police or roving school security specialists and transported to designated school sites closest to the point of pickup. Parents are notified, a warning is issued, and the student is returned to school. Staff members monitor the student's attendance following the first offense and, if the problem persists, the student is referred to court.

#### *Interagency collaboration*

This program promotes the concept that the community is the chief enforcer of school attendance laws. It stresses that all community agencies, institutions, local businesses and residents benefit when students are in class. The community supports the program by excluding school-age students from businesses during school hours, employing students only after school hours (except those in work-study jobs), boarding up and locking abandoned buildings, organizing neighborhood watches, providing positive media coverage for the program and providing incentives to reward good attendance.

#### **Attendance Improvement/Dropout Prevention Program**

Bureau of Student Development

New York State Education Department, 362 EBA

Albany, New York 12234

518/474-6943

#### *Background and objectives*

In March 1984 the New York State Legislature appropriated financial aid for programs to promote school attendance and reduce student dropouts. The legislature noted that fewer than 75 percent of students entering high school in New York state complete their secondary education. Funds were targeted for districts with the lowest attendance rates and with the largest student populations identified as having high potential for dropping out.

#### *Program description*

The Attendance Improvement/Dropout Prevention Program is a major statewide effort to address these problems. It was established by the state legislature through an amendment to the Education Law (Section 3602[25]) and was funded by a \$52 million state appropriation during its sixth year (1990-91). These funds were allocated to the 10 percent of the school districts with the poorest attendance ratios.

The legislation requires school districts to submit proposals describing how state aid would be spent to improve attendance and truancy conditions. The state Education Department developed

***The legislature noted that fewer than 75 percent of students entering high school in New York state complete their secondary education. Funds were targeted for districts with the lowest attendance rates and with the largest student populations identified as having high potential for dropping out.***

*Guidelines for Applicants*, which includes application and budget forms as well as recommending program activities and services. Suggested interventions include more counseling, increased school/home contacts, greater parental involvement and additional teacher contact time.

*Interagency collaboration*

The state initiated and funded this program. The Commissioner's Regulation (175.23), which implements the program, requires school districts to coordinate programs and services with public and private community agencies and organizations. Mental health agencies, social service agencies and other community-based groups have provided outreach and other support services to projects.

**New Futures School**

5400 Cutler, NE

Albuquerque, New Mexico 87110

505/883-5680

*Background and objectives*

The New Futures School, an alternative school of the Albuquerque Public School System, has offered programs since 1970 to help keep pregnant and parenting teens in school. Employment training, counseling, child care, health services, secondary education and GED preparation are offered. Support has come from the public school district, the Jobs Training Partnership Act, a Social Services Block Grant and private foundations. During the 1989-90 school year, approximately 60 teen parents had partially subsidized employment out of the 550 youths served. The employment training program was not funded for 1985-86, but it was reinstated in 1986-87 with funding from Perkins Vocational Education and private foundations.

*Program description*

Satisfactory school progress and daily participation in a job training class is required for participation in the student employment program, which awards school credit for work experience. New Futures recruits community employers and offers vocational awareness programs.

Public service announcements tell potential students about the program. In addition to self-referrals, the medical community, health department, and educational and social agencies recommend the school to pregnant and parenting teens.

The program teaches job-related skills, promotes positive attitudes

toward work and increases awareness of job opportunities. It also teaches academic, health, parenting and life-management skills as well as promoting a positive self-image. The teacher in the program, Sharon Fox, was the 1987 National Home Economics Teacher of the Year.

### *Interagency collaboration*

The New Futures School program benefits from many community services and agencies. It is co-sponsored by New Futures, Inc., a non-profit community-based organization, and the school district. Community agencies provide referrals, and local employers supply jobs. An advisory committee, with members from private industry, guides the school's vocational programs.

The University of New Mexico sponsors health clinics in family practice and prenatal care. The Health Department holds well-child clinics one day each month. A federally funded Women, Infants and Children program clinic is conducted weekly, and the city's bookmobile visits the school each week. A cadre of volunteers provides several special services at the school, with the coordinator's time supported by the Albuquerque Community Foundation and New Futures, Inc.

### **Special Pals Program**

Pioneer Engaged in Educating and Rewarding Students

Pioneer High School

10800 East Benavon Street

Whittier, California 90606

213/698-8121, extension 8344

### *Background and objectives*

Officials in the Whittier Union High School District started the Pioneer Engaged in Educating and Rewarding Students program as an attempt to reduce the high school dropout rate. It was predicted that 24 percent of the freshmen who started high school in 1985 would not graduate. Pioneer High School established the Special Pals program aimed at providing personal support for identified at-risk students during their freshman year.

### *Program description*

The program involves pairing at-risk students with significant adults to increase the feeling of personal involvement and support. The special pals, school employee volunteers, are asked to contact the students at least once a quarter. Pals are encouraged to send their students greeting cards, take them to lunch or attend their extracurricular activities. Pioneer arranges occasional parties for the

---

pals and students. Additionally, the pals receive quarterly report cards on the students but are encouraged not to overemphasize academics.

In selecting the target students, counselors used a list of 26 criteria, including attendance, grades, self-esteem, reading disabilities and police-related problems. In its initial year, 100 at-risk students were identified. Fifty were randomly selected to participate in the program. The remaining 50 were monitored to see if the program had an effect. Of the 50 students with pals, 40 were still in school after the first year. Of the other 50, only 30 remained enrolled. Each September, a new group of participants is selected and assigned to special pals.

## Bibliography

Brimm, J.L.; Forgety, J.; and Sadler, K. "Student Absenteeism, A Survey Report," *NASSP Bulletin* 62 (February 1978).

Bowman, P.H., and Matthews, C.V. *Motivations of Youth for Leaving School*. Quincy, Illinois: University of Chicago and Quincy Youth Development Project, September 1960.

Burke, N.S., and Simons, A. "Factors Which Precipitate Dropouts and Delinquency," *Federal Probation* 29 (1965):28-32.

California Assembly Office of Research. *Dropping Out, Losing Out: The High Cost for California*. Sacramento, California: September 1985.

California Department of Justice. *Truancy Reduction: The Hooky Handbook*. Sacramento, California: School Safety Center, 1984.

California School Boards Association. *How to Keep Students in School*. Sacramento, California: California School Boards Association, 1981.

Carroll, C. Dennis. "Unpublished Tabulation from High School and Beyond." National Center for Education Statistics, Longitudinal Studies Branch, March 1984.

Coleman, James S.; Hoffer, Thomas; and Kilgore, Sally. *High School Achievement*. New York: Basic Books, 1982.

*Community/School Comprehensive Dropout Prevention Program*. Richmond, Virginia: Richmond Public Schools (printed 1980-81, revised 1983-84).

"For the Schools. Memo from Marion Superior Court, Juvenile Division, and Marion County Prosecutor's Office for a coordinated effort to combat truancy and emotional neglect." Marion County, Indiana, Summer 1983.

Fortune, Rex. "The Interagency Approach to Truancy and Suspension," *California School Boards* 43 (June 1984).

Fresno Interagency Task Force. *Report of the Fresno Interagency Task Force on School Dropouts*. Fresno, California: Fresno Interagency Committee, March 1984.

Gallup, Alec M. "The Gallup Poll of Teachers' Attitudes Toward the Public Schools," *Phi Delta Kappan* 65 (October 1984):97-107.

Gallup, Alec M., and Elam, Stanley M. "The 21st Annual Gallup Poll of the Public's Attitudes Toward the Public Schools," *Phi Delta Kappan* 71 (September 1989):41-54.

Grant, W. Vance, and Snyder, Thomas D. *Digest of Education Statistics, 1987*. National Center for Education Statistics, 1987.

Hutzler, John L., and Nimick, Ellen. *Juvenile Court Jurisdiction Over Children's Conduct; 1982 Comparative Analysis of Juvenile and Family Codes and National Standards*. Pittsburgh, Pennsylvania: National Center for Juvenile Justice, June 1982.

Kandel, Denise B.; Raveis, Victoria H.; and Kandel, Paul. "Continuity in Discontinuities, Adjustment in Young Adulthood of Former School Absentees," *Youth and Society* 15 (March 1984).

Kelly, D.H., and Balch, R. "Social Origins and School Failure: A Re-examination of Cohen's Theory of Working Class Delinquency," *Pacific Sociological Review* 14 (1971).

Kyle, Charles. "'Los Preciosos,' The Magnitude of and Reasons for the Hispanic Dropout Problems: A Case Study in Chicago Public Schools." Unpublished doctoral dissertation, Evanston, Illinois: Northwestern University, 1984.

Matthews, C.V. "The Serious Problem of the School Dropout," *Illinois Education* 24 (1962):209-212.

McDonald, James E., and Sheperd, George. "School Phobia: An Overview," *Journal of School Psychology* 14, 4 (1976).

National Center for Education Statistics. *Bulletin No. 38-221-B*. U.S. Department of Education, 1984.

Oakland Schools, Department of Pupil Personnel Services. *READ: Resource Handbook for School Administrators*. Oakland, Michigan: Oakland Schools, 1984.

Office of the Los Angeles County Superintendent of Schools. *Prevention of Truancy: Programs and Strategies That Address the Problems of Truancy and Dropouts*. Office of the Los Angeles County Superintendent of Schools, Division of Attendance, Pupil

and Administrative Services, 1986.

Ohio Department of Education. *Improving Attendance*. Columbus, Ohio: Ohio Department of Education, 1983.

Open Roads Issues Research Project. *Push Out, Step Out*. California: Citizens Policy Center, 1982.

Plisko, Valena White, ed. *The Condition of Education*. National Center for Education Statistics, 1984 ed.

Pulliam, John D. *History of Education in America*. Columbus, Ohio: Charles E. Merrill Publishing Co., 1982.

*READ, Resource Handbook for School Administrators*, Vol. X. Pontiac, Michigan: Department of Pupil Personnel Services, Oakland Schools, 1984.

Sabatino, David A., and Mauser, August J. *Specialized Education in Today's Secondary Schools*. Boston, Massachusetts: Allyn and Bacon, Inc., 1978.

Thornton, William E., Jr.; James, Jennifer; and Doerner, William G. *Delinquency and Justice*. New York: Random House, 1984.

Timberlake, Constance. "Why Do Students Drop Out of School? A Selected and Related Literature Review." Unpublished paper developed at Syracuse University, College for Human Development, Community Services Department, June 1980.

Toby, Jackson. "Violence in School," *Crime and Justice*, Vol. 4, edited by Michael Tonry and Norval Morris. Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 1983.

U.S. Department of Commerce, Bureau of the Census. *Current Population Reports*, Series P-80. Washington, D.C.: Government Printing Office, 1981.

U.S. Department of Labor, Bureau of Labor Statistics. "Special Labor Force Studies." (Unpublished data, 1981).

Washington, Roosevelt. "A Survey-Analysis of Problems Faced By Inner-City High School Students Who Have Been Classified As Truants," *The High School Journal* 56 (February 1973):248-257.

## Appendix I

### Assessment Survey-A

#### Review of District Attendance Policy and Practices

The California School Boards Association compiled the following list of questions designed to serve as a useful reference point for district policy review:

1. Are current attendance policies and procedures understood by the school staff, parents and students?
2. Are the policies and procedures effective in maintaining or improving attendance?
3. Are students given enough reasons for wanting to be in school?
4. Are parents quickly notified about their children's absences?
5. Do counselors actually "counsel"?
6. Are there educational alternatives for students who do not excel in the regular school program?
7. Do administrators, teachers and classified employees understand how important their roles are to regular student attendance?
8. Are community resources used to achieve maximum attendance?
9. Are the intervention strategies used to aid students with attendance problems effective?
10. Is absenteeism addressed early in a student's schooling to prevent a cycle of truancy, failure and frustration?
11. Are there sanctions for students and parents, and are they consistently and fairly applied? Have they been effective?

*Adapted from How to Keep Students in School (No. 3), California School Boards Association, Sacramento, California, 1981.*

### Assessment Survey-B

#### Check List for Assessing an Attendance Improvement Program

The "Check List for Assessing an Attendance Improvement Program" may be used to assess the current attendance program and to serve as a guide in choosing the key elements of a comprehensive attendance program.

Yes                  No

\_\_\_\_\_                  \_\_\_\_\_

Are there district and school *attendance policies and procedures* that emphasize the importance of regular school attendance and encourage the development of activities that promote regular attendance?

Yes	No	
_____	_____	Is <i>detailed information</i> available on student attendance? Does the information identify good and poor attendance patterns for individual students, and is it used as the basis for providing rewards, counseling or taking disciplinary action?
_____	_____	Are <i>early intervention strategies</i> used to help students with attendance problems? Do the strategies provide for follow-up contact at critical periods and include fair and appropriate consequences for truancy and tardiness?
_____	_____	Are <i>school-to-home contacts</i> made to communicate the importance of attendance, to notify parents as soon as their children are absent and to offer assistance in solving attendance problems?
_____	_____	Does the school use <i>incentives and rewards</i> to encourage students to improve their own attendance voluntarily?
_____	_____	Do <i>parent education and staff development activities</i> support school attendance improvement efforts?
_____	_____	Does the school offer <i>educational options</i> that provide students a wide variety of programs to accommodate differences in learning styles?
_____	_____	Is there a <i>curriculum</i> that offers adequate opportunities for students to be challenged in developing their basic skills in computing, language and interpersonal communication as well as the more advanced skills?
_____	_____	Are there <i>guidance and counseling programs</i> that provide advice and curricular support for personal, social, academic and career development?
_____	_____	Are <i>community relationships</i> established with law enforcement and service agencies and parents to encourage and support the school's efforts to improve attendance?

Adapted from School Attendance Improvement: A Blueprint for Action, California State Department of Education, Sacramento, California, 1983.

## Appendix II

### Chicago Network Program Dropout Cause Perception Survey

The 1985 graduating seniors and the teaching staff of Clemente High School were asked to indicate their perception of the causes for students dropping out of school. The following survey form was used, and the severity was determined by adding numbers 4 and 5 and figuring the percentage in relation to those who answered the questions. The survey was returned by 284 of the 430 seniors, and 150 teachers also took part. Results of the survey appear on the next page.

#### Survey

Position \_\_\_\_\_ School \_\_\_\_\_

PROBLEM	YOUR PERCEPTION OF THE PROBLEM				
	Problem	Severe Problem			
<i>School-based problems</i>					
Poor achievement	0	1	2	3	4 5
Language handicaps	0	1	2	3	4 5
Non-relevant curricula	0	1	2	3	4 5
Racial bias	0	1	2	3	4 5
Improper class or program placement	0	1	2	3	4 5
Discipline procedures	0	1	2	3	4 5
Poor pupil-teacher relationships	0	1	2	3	4 5
Poor pupil-pupil relationships	0	1	2	3	4 5
Teacher expectancy	0	1	2	3	4 5
School climate	0	1	2	3	4 5
Gang-related	0	1	2	3	4 5
<i>Student welfare problems</i>					
Inadequate clothing, shoes and food	0	1	2	3	4 5
Health and physical problems (including drug/alcohol abuse)	0	1	2	3	4 5
Mental and emotional problems	0	1	2	3	4 5
Family problems and demands	0	1	2	3	4 5
Pregnancy	0	1	2	3	4 5

*Community-based problems*

Pessimistic attitudes about the value of education	0	1	2	3	4	5
Negative peer pressure that discourages regular school attendance	0	1	2	3	4	5
Gang-related	0	1	2	3	4	5

**Survey results**

CLASSIFIED PROBLEM	GRADUATING SENIORS Percentages	TEACHING STAFF Percentages
<i>School-based problems</i>		
Poor achievement*	31	79
Language handicaps	14	19
Non-relevant curricula	8	19
Racial bias	14	4
Improper class or program placement	30	24
Discipline procedures	32	24
Poor pupil-teacher relationships*	37	9
Poor pupil-pupil relationships*	36	17
Teacher expectancy	19	21
School climate	27	17
Gang-related*	78	63
<i>Child and family welfare problems</i>		
Inadequate clothing, shoes and food	16	13
Health and physical problems (including drug and alcohol abuse)*	43	34
Mental and emotional problems	37	29
Family problems and demands*	52	63
Pregnancy*	70	57
<i>Community-based problems</i>		
Pessimistic attitudes about the value of education*	41	74
Negative peer pressure that discourages regular school attendance*	45	67
Gang-related*	86	73

\* Note the significant variation between the perception of teachers and students.

Source: Network of Youth Services Education Committee, Chicago, Illinois.

## Appendix III

### Attendance Policies-A District Attendance Policy Development

#### 1. *Participation*

Schedule sufficient time for a group involving those affected by the policy (students, parents, teachers, administrators and any others) to take a look at what has been developed. There needs to be careful consideration of the pros and cons of as many aspects as possible.

#### 2. *Principles*

Try to receive consensus on the following:

- a. the minimum level of acceptable attendance;
- b. what constitutes excused absences (all others are by definition unexcused);
- c. the distinction between out-of-class experiences such as field trips, performances, etc., and absences;
- d. the place of tardies, if any, in the system;
- e. the procedures for make-up work;
- f. what rehabilitation and education steps are to be taken;
- g. what disciplinary steps are to be taken;
- h. what appeal opportunities need be provided; and
- i. how consistent these principles are with the school's student rights and responsibilities policy.

#### 3. *Mechanical/operational*

Delay mechanical and operational details until there is agreement on basic principles. This is difficult, but if mechanical details are introduced too soon, they tend to stall creative thinking on principles.

- a. In general, that policy which governs best governs least.  
Make the rules as clear and straightforward as possible but complete.
- b. Always consider the amount of paperwork at exchange-of-information points. Every exchange point (from teacher to attendance office, attendance office to parents, etc.) builds in accumulated error.
- c. Consider carefully the need to make information do double and triple duty (i.e., to inform parents, to provide counseling data, to assess the effectiveness of the system) and try to develop a record-keeping system that is fast, accurate and meaningful in all these areas.
- d. Consider first the classroom teachers. They must administer

the policy and their day is already crowded with duties. Anything you can do to lighten their load will produce dividends in accuracy and cooperation.

- e. Be realistic in your estimate of costs. Good attendance operations are not cheap, whether done manually or electronically.
- f. Bring your superintendent in on the project early and keep the superintendent updated on progress. There should be no surprises.
- g. Provide for legal review.

#### 4. *Presentation to the board of education*

When preliminary work is done, it becomes time to present the program to the board of education through the superintendent.

- a. Remember, the best and most effective advocates are the community members, staff and students who have worked on the program and who are committed to it.
- b. When the presentation is made to the board, stress first the firm, fair aspect of disciplinary procedures. Then spend the major share of the presentation on the rehabilitation and education functions of the program. Try to stress that although both aspects are essential, the ultimate goal is behavior change rather than punishment.
- c. Be prepared to help the board see that no matter how good the policy is, there will be students and parents who will object and that solid rational support from the board is essential to make the system work.
- d. Have the board take a definitive, strong position on the value of regular attendance (the rationale).

#### 5. *Communication to staff*

- a. Devote time in faculty meetings to the proposed policy prior to presenting it to the board.
- b. When policy has been approved by the board, review it again with staff members. Review their role and responsibility in the enforcement of the policy.

#### 6. *Communication to parents and students*

- a. Once adopted, it is crucial to inform students, parents and staff of procedures. Be certain as many people as possible understand how, when, why and what happens.
- b. Give the program time to work! By reacting too quickly to early problems and dropping or radically modifying the program, it is possible to lose what has been gained. It also will make it more difficult to develop programs in the future. At

the same time, be willing to tinker with the program a little to make it more efficient and acceptable.

- c. The attendance policy should be reviewed annually with all students through student orientation programs at the beginning of the school year and should be placed in the student code of conduct. New students and parents should be informed of the attendance policy during the enrollment process.

#### 7. *Evaluation*

The policy and its effect should be evaluated annually. Is it working? What has been its effect on the dropout rate? Is it cost-effective? What problems did we have with it? Should we modify it?

*Source: Oakland Schools. READ: Resource Handbook for School Administrators, Vol. X. Pontiac, Michigan, Oakland Schools, 1984.*

### **Attendance Policies-B Model Statements of Policy and Rules**

#### *Statement of Policy*

It shall be the policy of the \_\_\_\_\_  
School District to encourage regular attendance on the part of its students. Students who are absent from school without reasonable excuse shall be subject to disciplinary measures, which may include but not be limited to, short-term and long-term suspension.

#### *Statement of Rules*

##### I. Philosophy

Students will be expected to attend classes regularly and to be on time in order to receive maximum benefit from the instructional program, to assist in keeping disruption of the educational environment to a minimum, and to develop habits of punctuality, self-discipline and responsibility. While it is possible for an absent student to make up much of the schoolwork missed, it is impossible to completely compensate for absence from classes.

Absences always cause some disruption in the educational progress of the student who was absent. In order to maintain interest and understanding in a program of instruction, students should not expect to be absent any more than is absolutely necessary. Students who fail to make up work missed may not understand what the teacher is currently presenting, and the student may also become discouraged with the double burden of keeping current and making up missed work. Irregular atten-

dance or tardiness by students not only retards their own studies, but also interferes with the progress of those pupils who are regular and prompt in attendance.

Students who have good attendance records are most likely to achieve higher grades, enjoy school life to a greater degree and have more employment opportunities after leaving school. Prospective employers expect promptness and regular attendance from employees and are reluctant to hire persons who have not established good habits of responsibility and self-discipline. Lifelong patterns of responsibility and the self-discipline of regular attendance and promptness are fostered by the attention given them during the years of school attendance.

There are times, however, when school officials may determine that the problems associated with absence from school are outweighed by the advantages of an activity in which the student participates and they may endorse or sponsor an activity or trip. Attendance at such approved trips and activities will not be considered an absence from school.

## II. Attendance notification

- A. Whenever a student is absent from school on more than \_\_\_\_ occasions in a school year or any multiple of \_\_\_\_ thereafter, a notice shall be sent by the principal within three school business days informing the student's parents of the dates of absence, the reasons given therefore and whether the absence was considered excused or unexcused.
- B. Whenever a student is absent on more than \_\_\_\_ occasions, the above-mentioned notice shall include a brief summary of the district's philosophy on regular attendance and an invitation to the parents to visit the school to discuss the attendance of their child.

If the parents are reluctant to visit the school or if no contact is made by the parents, a school employee designated by the principal shall make a home visit in order to impress upon the parents the importance of regular school attendance.

## III. Tardiness

- A. Tardies may be excused upon the same reasonable grounds as those considered for absences. \_\_\_\_ unexcused tardies shall be considered one unexcused absence.
- B. Students tardy to school will not be admitted to school without the written permission of the principal or the principal's designee.
- C. Students tardy to class will not be admitted to class without

written permission to enter class from the office or from the school employee responsible for the tardiness.

#### IV. Absence

A. Absences from school will be considered excused for the following reasons:

1. Personal illness;
2. Death or serious illness in the immediate family or household;
3. Medical or dental appointments that cannot be made other than during school time;
4. Short-term suspension from school; or
5. Other reasons that can be justified from an educational standpoint.

B. Absences from school for the following reasons will generally be treated as unexcused absences:

1. Shopping trips;
2. Vacations; or
3. Work for parents or employer.

C. Reasons for absence from school that can be justified from an educational standpoint may be approved by the principal of the attendance center. Permission for such absences should be obtained in advance of the absence from school. Failure to obtain prior permission may result in the absence being considered unexcused. The principal should document the reasons for excusing or refusing to excuse such absences.

D. Schoolwork missed due to any absence must be completed to the satisfaction of each teacher whose class or classes were missed.

1. When students can anticipate absences, every effort should be made to see that schoolwork is made up in advance of the absence. The principal may determine that the completion of schoolwork in advance be a prerequisite to allowing the absence to be excused.
2. When an absence was not anticipated, all schoolwork must be made up within the number of school days that are double those of the absence (e.g., three days absence must be made up in six school days). Absences of more than five days must be made up as arranged with each teacher.
3. Students who do not make up their work as required by this rule may be subject to disciplinary actions as described in section V, paragraph C.
4. Students shall receive full credit for schoolwork made up due to absences.

E. Students who anticipate an absence, especially when the absence must have the principal's prior approval, shall give timely notice to the school office in advance of the anticipated absence. When time permits, such notification shall be in writing and signed by the student and the parents or guardian of the student. Failure to notify the school in advance may result/in the absence being considered as unexcused.

F. All students who were absent from school for any reason shall submit in written form the specific reasons for their absence, the specific days or times they were absent, verification by the doctor or dentist, if appropriate, and the signature of the student and a parent or guardian.

Parents and guardians should be encouraged to phone the school regarding a student's absence on the day of the absence.

Only when a student of majority age (18 years or older, or married) is not residing with the student's parents or guardian may the student present his or her own excuse for absence without parental verification. The principal should be notified in advance of any such circumstances.

G. In the event that the principal determines it is advisable to verify an excuse given for an absence, the principal may take appropriate steps to do so. When it is determined that an excuse is forged or misrepresents the facts, the principal may treat those instances of absence as unexcused.

H. No later than four weeks following the close of each school quarter, the principal in charge of each attendance center will report to the board of directors regarding average daily attendance for the previous quarter period. Such report will include an explanation of the data presented.

#### V. Unexcused absences

A. Students who are absent from school or class without reasonable excuse shall be subject to disciplinary measures.

Reasonable excuses are those that are acceptable reasons as provided in Section III of these rules. All other absences from school shall be considered unexcused absences.

B. Each day or portion of a day of an unexcused absence from school or class shall be considered a separate violation of these rules.

C. Students who are found to be absent without reasonable excuse may be subjected to one or more of the following disciplinary measures:

1. Probation;

2. After-school detention;
3. Non-teaching day attendance;
4. In-school suspension;
5. Removal of school privileges;
6. Short-term suspension from school; or
7. Long-term suspension from school.

#### VI. Reduction of grades prohibited

Reduction of grades shall not be used as a disciplinary measure against a student because of absence from school.

#### VII. Review

##### A. Teacher's decision

Students and parents wishing to have a review of a teacher's decision regarding tardiness and make-up work rendered under this absence rule may do so by filing a written request for review with the principal within five school business days after the teacher's decision was rendered. The principal will determine a mutually agreeable time, place and date for the review and notify the student, parents and teacher accordingly. At the appointed time, the parties attending the review will meet to discuss the matter informally. Following the review, the principal shall affirm, reverse or modify the teacher's decision.

##### B. Principal's decision

Students, parents and teachers may obtain a review of the principal's decision under this absence rule by filing a written request for review within five school business days with the superintendent. The superintendent or designee will determine a mutually agreeable time, place and date for the review and notify the interested persons accordingly. At the conclusion of the review, the superintendent or the superintendent's designee shall affirm, reverse or modify the principal's decision.

#### VIII. Truancy officer

##### A. Appointment

The District board shall appoint one or more persons as truancy officers for the purpose of enforcing state laws regarding truancy.

Comment: Section 299.10 authorizes boards in all school districts to appoint a "truancy officer." Those districts with a population greater than 20,000 persons must appoint a "truancy officer." That section authorizes the appointment of a police officer or other suitable person.

- 
- B. The truancy officer shall be notified of all instances of unexcused absences, and when a student has accumulated \_\_\_\_\_ unexcused absences from school, the truancy officer shall contact the student's parents regarding their cooperation in the matter. The truancy officer shall report to the principal regarding the parents' cooperativeness.
  - C. When a student who is subject to the provisions of the state's compulsory attendance laws has accumulated \_\_\_\_\_ or more unexcused absences, and the parents remain uncooperative, or in the instance of \_\_\_\_\_ unexcused absences, the truancy officer, through the county attorney, shall begin appropriate legal action against the parents.
  - D. The truancy officer shall attempt to maintain good liaison with the county attorney's office and juvenile authorities.

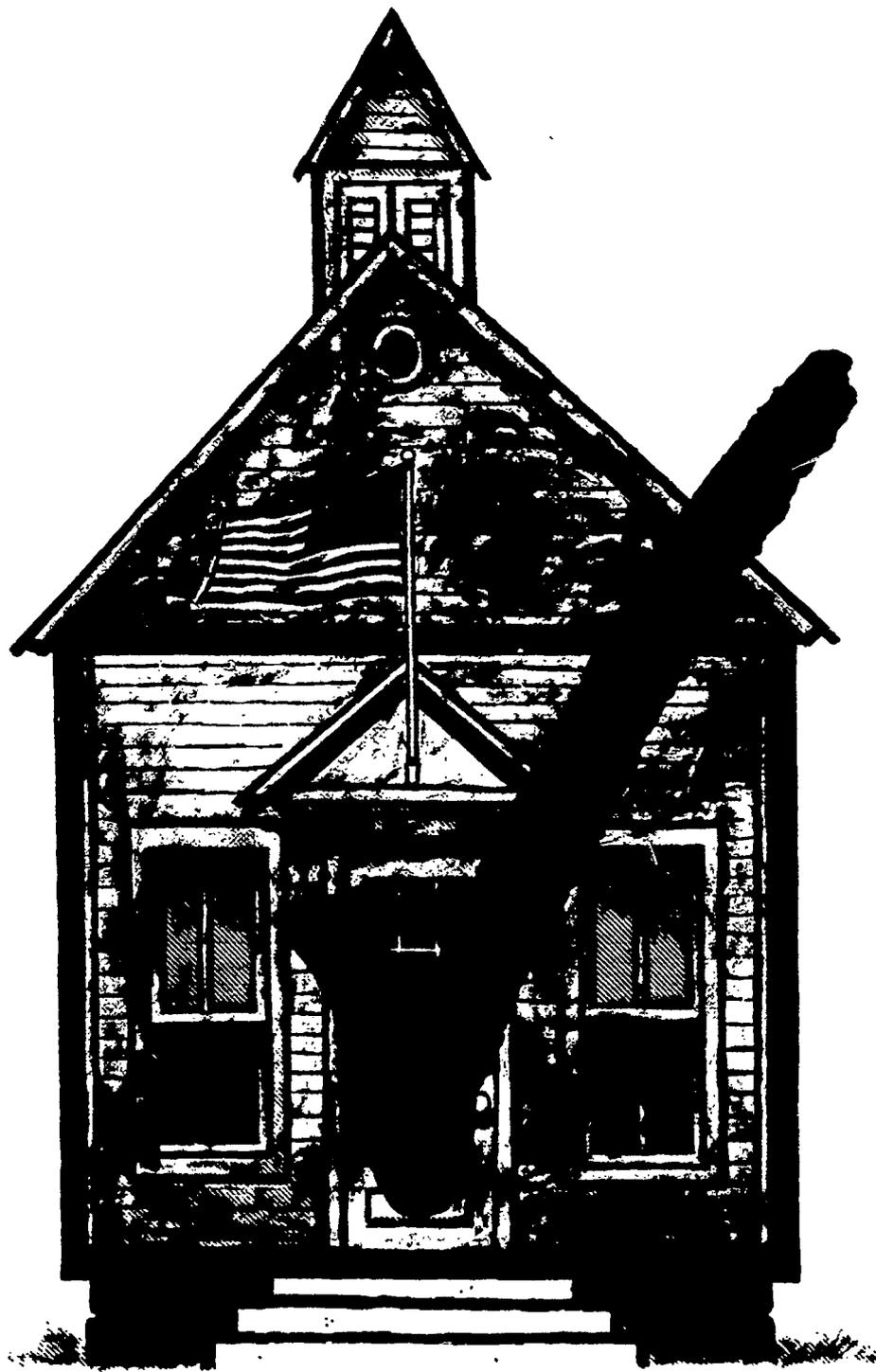
*Source: State of Iowa, Department of Public Instruction. Absences: A Model Policy and Rules. Des Moines, Iowa: Department of Public Instruction, September 1978.*

---

## Chapter III

# Personal safety

<b>The issues</b> _____	<b>107</b>
<i>Substance abuse and trafficking</i> _____	108
<i>Bullying and victimization</i> _____	111
<i>Gangs</i> _____	112
<i>Campus assaults and weapons</i> _____	113
<i>Child abuse</i> _____	116
<i>Adolescent suicide</i> _____	116
<b>Assessing the problems</b> _____	<b>118</b>
<b>Strategies</b> _____	<b>122</b>
<i>Substance abuse and trafficking</i> _____	122
<i>Bullying and victimization</i> _____	125
<i>Gangs</i> _____	128
<i>Campus assaults and weapons</i> _____	130
<i>Child abuse</i> _____	135
<i>Adolescent suicide</i> _____	136
<b>Sample programs</b> _____	<b>140</b>
<b>Bibliography</b> _____	<b>165</b>
<b>Appendix I — District policies and procedures</b> _____	<b>173</b>
<b>Appendix II — Assessment surveys</b> _____	<b>179</b>



## Chapter III

# Personal safety

School crime and violence have been featured prominently in newspaper headlines and on nightly news broadcasts for more than a decade. As reports of school-related criminal activity multiply, community residents increasingly express concern. Why, they ask, are our schools becoming unsafe and fear-ridden? What, if anything, is done to control crime and violence? Why isn't *good, old-fashioned* discipline used to discourage misconduct?

Educators, on the other hand, have their own questions. Why does there seem to be inadequate discipline in the home? Why don't parents and other members of the community support school officials? Why aren't more resources channeled into the schools to assure a safe and secure environment?

Law enforcement officials have still different questions. Why is there confusion over what constitutes a criminal violation and what constitutes a school disciplinary problem? Why aren't the police called immediately when illegal activity occurs at school? Why are law enforcers sometimes considered an unwanted presence on school campuses?

Parents, community members, educators and law enforcers all influence our children's lives, and all have questions about discipline and school safety. This chapter addresses the need for communication and cooperation among these groups and describes positive, collaborative approaches from across the nation that have effectively reduced crimes in the school setting.

### The issues

Historically, our nation's schools have distanced themselves from the criminal justice system. For generations, educators have used discretion and relied on their own resources when dealing with campus disturbances. This self-reliance often resulted in handling school problems without community assistance. To further complicate this situation, many educators are uncertain about the differences between disciplinary infractions and criminal acts — a critical distinction. Too often, school administrators have lumped all

***According to the 21st Annual Gallup Poll of the Public's Attitudes Toward Public Schools, the public in 1989 ranked drug abuse first and lack of discipline second as the biggest problems for schools today.***

infractions into a general category of *violation of school rules* without identifying serious offenses that require a law enforcement response.

This chapter addresses criminal violations and the related topics of youth gangs, child abuse and teen-age suicide, contemporary issues directly affecting student safety. When addressing these problems, it is important for schools to have written discipline codes that clearly differentiate between school misconduct and school crime. *School misconduct* is student behavior that is unacceptable to campus or district administrators but does not violate criminal statutes. Absenteeism, tardiness, disrespect, bullying, inappropriate language, smoking, cheating on exams or lying are examples of misconduct.

*School crimes* are those acts defined as illegal by federal and state statutes or local ordinances. Examples of criminal acts are arson, assault, vandalism, extortion, and possession or use of alcohol, drugs or weapons. School and community crimes usually are categorized either as "crimes against property" or "crimes against persons." (Table 3-A provides a *glossary of criminal terms* as a guideline for educators. Appendix I-A is a sample school discipline code that clearly distinguishes between misbehavior and criminal activity.)

#### *Substance abuse and trafficking*

For the fourth year in a row, the public has singled out drug abuse as the most important problem facing the nation's schools. According to the 21st Annual Gallup Poll of the Public's Attitudes Toward Public Schools, the public in 1989 ranked drug abuse first and lack of discipline second as the biggest problems for schools today.

In the latest annual national survey of drug abuse among high school seniors, more than half (50.9 percent) of America's teenagers said they have used illicit drugs at least once before completing high school. The 1989 survey, sponsored by the National Institute on Drug Abuse and conducted by the University of Michigan Institute for Social Research, showed that nearly four out of 10 seniors had used an illicit drug in the past year — and one-fifth had used something other than marijuana.

Two-fifths of the seniors surveyed reported some use of marijuana during their lifetime, still making it the most widely used drug. But only 29.6 percent of those surveyed in 1989 said they have used marijuana in the last year — the lowest level ever reported in the history of the survey — and 2.9 percent said they are daily users.

For the third year in a row since the Michigan study began in 1978, a significant drop was measured in cocaine use. The number of high school seniors reporting cocaine use in the year prior to

**Table 3-A**  
**Definitions of Criminal Terms**

Note: These definitions are from California penal and education codes. For corresponding crime definitions in other states, consult the school district's legal staff, the district attorney or state attorney general.

**Assault/attack/menace:** *Assault* is defined as "an unlawful attempt, coupled with a present ability, to commit a violent injury on the person of another." *Attack* (battery) is the "willful and unlawful use of force or violence upon the person of another." *Menace* is an act performed in a threatening manner or done to show intention of harm.

**Assault/attack with a deadly weapon:** *Assaults or attacks with a deadly weapon* are defined as acts or attempted acts by one person on another with the intent to kill, maim or inflict severe bodily injury with the use of such items as: firearms; knives or other cutting instruments; clubs; bricks; bicycle chains; nunchakus; bottles; explosives; acids; fire; and bodily parts, such as hands, fists and feet. (Note: Crimes involving hands, fists and feet are included in this category if they result in serious injury requiring medical care by a health practitioner.)

**Homicide:** *Homicide* is the killing of a person by another person.

**Sex offenses:** *Sex offenses* include an act or attempted act initiated by a person against the chastity, common decency, morals and the like of another person and accompanied by threat, fear or danger. The offenses include misdemeanors (e.g., indecent exposure, obscene phone calls) and felonies (e.g., rape, sodomy, child molestation).

**Robbery:** *Robbery* is defined as "the taking of property in possession of another, from his person or immediate presence, against his will, accomplished by means of force or fear."

**Extortion:** *Extortion* is defined as "obtaining or attempting to obtain property from another person, with that person's consent, through the wrongful use of force or fear. Usually, extortion does not involve the element of immediate danger inherent in robbery.

**Substance/chemical/alcohol abuse:** *Substance/chemical/alcohol abuse* refers to the possession, use or sale of any chemical, alcoholic or intoxicating substance.

**Possession of weapons:** *Possession of weapons* includes the unauthorized presence or use of dangerous weapons, which include, but are not limited to, all kinds of guns, knives, bombs, explosives and firecrackers.

**Property crimes:** *Property crimes* include arson, burglary, theft and vandalism. *Arson* is the malicious burning of or attempt to burn property belonging to another, regardless of the value of the property. *Burglary* is any unlawful entry to commit a felony or theft, even if force is not used to gain entry. *Property crime* also includes attempted burglary. *Theft* (larceny) is the taking and carrying away of property belonging to another with intent to deprive the rightful owner of its use, regardless of the property's value. This classification also includes attempted theft. *Vandalism* (to school or private property) is the intentional defacing or destroying of school property or another person's property.

the survey fell by 18 percent between 1988 and 1989, from 7.9 percent to 6.5 percent. A decrease of almost one-fifth — from 3.4 percent in 1988 to 2.8 percent in 1989 — was found in the proportion of seniors who said they were “current users” of cocaine. However, preliminary data on “crack” suggest it is not following the overall decline in cocaine use. In 1989, 4.7 percent of seniors reported having tried crack, while 3.1 percent had used it in the past year.

Crack is cheap and highly addictive — factors that have made the drug’s popularity soar in a short period of time. The crack trade has transformed some of the country’s toughest street gangs into drug-trafficking organizations that now extend to every major city and to many remote areas of the country as well. Gang members equipped with electronic pagers and automatic weapons are earning small fortunes dealing crack out of motel rooms, houses, parks, street corners and school campuses. In an effort to curtail drug dealing near schools, a new federal “schoolyard law” was passed that imposes stiffer penalties for adults convicted of selling or distributing drugs within 1,000 feet of a school.

Teen-age alcohol abuse also is a serious national concern. Nearly all (90.7 percent) high school seniors in the Michigan study said they have had experience with alcohol, and 60 percent have used alcohol in the past month. Perhaps the most disturbing finding was that 33 percent of seniors reported having five or more drinks in a row on at least one occasion in the past two weeks.

A 1986 survey of 5,000 Massachusetts high schools revealed that more than 90 percent of seniors had used alcohol or other drugs at least once, and 26 percent had used cocaine. The Georgia Task Force on Alcohol, Marijuana and Other Drugs questioned 450,000 students for a 1987 statewide study. The percentage of students reporting alcohol use ranged from 19 percent for sixth-graders to 61 percent for 12th-graders. Marijuana use ranged from 1 percent for sixth-graders to 20 percent for 12th-graders.

A survey of California secondary students during the 1987-88 school year revealed that drug use dropped significantly but alcohol abuse remained consistent since the 1986 survey. Commissioned by the state attorney general’s office, the survey showed that by the 11th grade, about 4 out of 10 students had used illegal drugs and about 6 out of 10 students had been intoxicated on alcohol.

Nine percent of seventh-graders and 23 percent of ninth-graders reported having used illegal drugs, according to the California survey. Nearly one-third of 11th-graders reported using marijuana at least once in the last six months — a 10 percent decrease from the 1986 survey. Cocaine use also had declined. In 1986, 17.6 percent of California’s 11th graders reported having used cocaine in

the last six months, compared to 11.2 percent in the 1988 survey.

Drug and alcohol abuse by juveniles is always against the law, yet educators do not always agree about how to react to substance abuse on campus. Educators are obligated to respond to drug and alcohol offenses in a manner consistent with state penal codes.

### *Bullying and victimization*

The school bully and the havoc he wreaks are accepted as undeniable facts of life for many educators. But recently, the school bully and his victims have captured the attention of psychologists and educators who are addressing the problem in growing numbers.

Fifteen percent of schoolchildren are estimated to be involved in bullying as a victim or as a bully; 10 percent are regularly attacked or harassed by bullies. These figures are based on surveys of more than 150,000 elementary and junior high students in Norway and Sweden conducted by Dr. Dan Olweus, professor of psychology at the University of Bergen in Norway and recently a fellow at the Center for Advanced Study in the Behavioral Sciences at Stanford University. Dr. Olweus believes these figures are consistent with American bullying patterns as well.

These young bullies are far more likely than other students to drop out of school, commit crimes as adults, and become abusive spouses and parents. Caring but firm intervention by adults is crucial to teach the bully how to handle aggression, and to teach the victim to be more assertive in fending off a bully's verbal or physical attacks.

Bullying also affects school attendance as well as the overall campus climate and safety. Victims understandably come to fear school itself because of the abuse they know awaits them. A 1984 study by the National Association of Secondary School Principals found that even in the best-administered schools, students surveyed reported their most serious concern was fear of other disruptive students such as bullies.

Dr. Olweus recommends that adults closely supervise recess and enforce "strict and straightforward" rules of behavior. He also advises teachers to mete out consistent, non-physical punishment to misbehaving children. Equally important, however, is for teachers to generously praise good behavior. If class rules are adhered to, Dr. Olweus says, bullying victims will enjoy the support of "neutral" and well-adjusted classmates. When a child is bullied, teachers should use their creativity to help him boost his self-esteem and earn the respect and friendship of his classmates. At the same time, parents are encouraged to teach their children to develop and maintain new friendships.

***These young bullies are far more likely than other students to drop out of school, commit crimes as adults, and become abusive spouses and parents.***

Basic to any anti-bullying program, says Dr. Olweus, is “a clear repudiation of repeated physical and mental maltreatment.” Naturally, this repudiation should be directed against the action, not the bully. Such an emphasis ought to come from many different sources — school authorities, teachers, classmates and parents. School authorities and teachers should give admonitions, and then back it up by actively intervening in bullying situations, to show that physical and mental abuse will not be tolerated in the school. Classmates can actively intervene as well by protecting the victim. Parents of bullies should deal with the problem through serious discussions, not by using physical punishment.

Dr. Olweus has written that these interventions “require a certain amount of courage on the part of adults, especially since all suggestions of even a slightly controlling character have come to seem so unfashionable. However, to fail to stop these activities implies a tacit confirmation — an attitude that seems very inhumane.”

### *Gangs*

During the past 20 years, youth gangs have assumed alarming new characteristics. Gang members may be as young as age 10 or 11, and gang activities are more violent than ever before. Gangs also have spread into suburban areas and other neighborhoods not formerly associated with gang activity. They operate openly on school campuses, often using very young children as fronts for weapons and drug carriers.

Gangs generally share many characteristics, including:

- selling and using illegal drugs;
- committing crimes and using violence to solve disputes;
- advertising their control over certain “turf” with graffiti;
- dressing according to certain colors and styles of clothing;
- displaying intense loyalty to their home gang and leaders;
- using hand signals and street names; and
- recruiting young members. (Most active gang members are under 18, but gang members are known to be as young as 7 and as old as 55.)

The growth of gangs has a serious impact on the level of crime in society. According to the latest available FBI statistics, kids under the age of 15 (not all gang members) were responsible for 201 murders in 1988, as well as 1,372 rapes, 11,345 aggravated assaults and 6,470 robberies. And although nearly one-third of all juveniles are arrested once in their lives, only 7 percent are responsible for 70 percent of all crime committed by youths. These are serious habitual juvenile offenders. This trend has prompted many

schools and communities to develop early prevention programs, strategies and curricula aimed at grades 3, 4 and 5. Early prevention is the most effective way to stem gang activity.

Gangs also are very mobile and increasingly well-organized. Law enforcement officers are now dealing with gangs from major cities that are moving into new areas or states and are assuming control over existing gangs and drug trafficking. Some gangs, realizing that special clothing marked them as gang members, have shunned distinct dress and hair styles to elude law enforcement.

Los Angeles County, considered the "gang capital" of the nation, has an estimated 80,000 gang members in more than 800 separate gangs. Although Los Angeles' gang problem is severe, other smaller cities are not immune from the gang threat. In Milwaukee, Wisconsin, for example, about 20 major gangs are causing a wave of violence and heartache in the city disproportionate to their overall number.

Educators also report gang problems in schools and an increase in gang-related violence and vandalism. Because youth gangs constitute a problem shared by both the community and school, the best prevention and response programs are collaborative efforts by educators, law enforcers and community members.

#### *Campus assaults and weapons*

One aspect of school crime that has captured substantial attention recently is assaults on students and school employees. Unfortunately, assault is perhaps the least understood crime occurring on American campuses. Because the legal definition of assault often is ambiguous, educators may be uncertain whether a disruption is a fight or an assault. It is also confusing to determine at what point a fight escalates into an assault or battery.

*Reducing School Crime and Student Misbehavior*, a publication of the National Institute of Justice, a division of the U.S. Department of Justice, differentiates between fights, which are disciplinary infractions, and assaults and batteries, which constitute criminal violations. The Institute states that while there is no legal definition for a fight, in school situations the term means the *mutual* participation in an altercation. *Battery* is defined as an *unlawful beating* in which an offender inflicts bodily harm on a victim. An assault can include jostling, tearing clothes, seizing or striking another. Basically, fights involve mutually combative participants, while a battery has at least one aggressor and one victim.

Everybody in school is a potential victim. Statistics indicate students more frequently are victims of violent school crimes than are teachers, but incidents involving teachers usually are more

***In Milwaukee, Wisconsin, for example, about 20 major gangs are causing a wave of violence and heartache in the city disproportionate to their overall number.***

severe. Robbery of a student often means extortion of lunch money or bus passes by fellow students, whereas robbery of a teacher is more often perpetrated by youthful intruders and accompanied by gratuitous violence. Younger, less experienced teachers are more likely to be attacked or robbed than older colleagues.

Statistics indicate male students are more than twice as likely to be victims of both robbery and assault as female students, and junior high school students are twice as likely to be robbed or assaulted as senior high students. Research also indicates that minority students are more likely to be attacked or robbed at school than white students. It is also reported that the overwhelming majority of perpetrators of violent school crimes are recognized by their victims, indicating most of the offenders are fellow students, not intruders. (Table 3-B suggests appropriate action for teachers and administrators encountering campus fights or assaults.)

The presence of weapons on campus increases the danger of school assaults. As early as 1958 the United States Senate subcommittee investigating juvenile delinquency learned about the smuggling of guns, knives and other forbidden articles into schools. Although congressional officials expressed surprise, most educators know there is nothing new in students carrying weapons on school campuses. What is new, however, is increasing student and faculty fear and the realization that those weapons will be used.

Guns and knives have traditionally appeared on school grounds. During the 1960s and 1970s, the list expanded to include razors and razor blades, clubs, metal knuckles, certain hair grooming implements and nunchakus. Because some of these items have a legitimate use, school districts sometimes are reluctant to ban them. The 1980s have seen the proliferation of semiautomatic machine gun-like weapons and foreign-made assault rifles, which easily can be converted into fully automatic weapons. More sophisticated bombs and other explosive devices also have appeared on our nation's campuses.

Most schools already have policies specifically identifying banned weapons and the consequences for having them on campus. The Chicago Public Schools' discipline policy defines various weapons and states that use of, possession of, and/or concealing a weapon may result in suspension, expulsion and arrest. In every case, the police are notified. California state law also defines weapons and recommends expulsion in every case involving possession of a handgun. In cases involving handguns, the local police department is always notified by the school district's police department. The rules for Seattle Public Schools define weapons and state that weapon use or possession is a criminal offense requiring district disciplinary action and/or criminal charges. While

**Table 3-B**  
**Intervention in School Fights and Assaults**

More teachers and administrators are injured while breaking up fights and assaults than during any other type of activity. This occurs because the person breaking up the altercation makes several critical mistakes.

First, the adult runs up to the fight and immediately jumps into the middle of the fracas and starts pulling the combatants apart. This action offers the kids a free shot at the adult. After all, in the heat of the fight, how could they possibly know that it was a teacher pulling them apart? They thought it was some other student!

The second critical mistake adults make is that they do not take the time to analyze the fight. By jumping right into the middle of the dispute, the adult does not know if one or both of the fighters has a weapon; if the altercation is a staged event — staged for the benefit of the teacher or administrator; if the fight is in the winding-down stage, meaning both kids are pooped; or who the aggressor is. You want to know who has or is getting the better blows in because that is the person you must watch.

The recommended procedure for breaking up altercations involves the following steps:

- Promptly *walk*, don't run to the fight so you may visually analyze the situation and mentally form a strategy as you approach.
- The moment you come in sight of the altercation, use your best cafeteria voice and let the world know you are coming and you want this nonsense stopped immediately.
- If possible, while *walking* to the fight, stop at various classrooms and obtain help from other teachers; make sure someone is sent to the office for additional help.
- Call out to any of the students you recognize and start giving orders: Mary, go to Mr. Frank's room; Sam, you go to the office and get Mr. Jones; Calvin, go to your locker and get me your science book. It does not matter what you tell the kids to do. Just remember, kids are accustomed to responding to directions, so give them directions. You want them away from the commotion.
- If you know the fighters by name, call out each of their names and let them know you know who they are. This may be the time for a little humor. If you can get some of the kids laughing, it will ease the tension.
- If you are confronted with a real donnybrook of a fight, get additional help. Don't try to be a hero.

*Source: Peter D. Blauvelt. Effective Strategies for School Security. Reston, Virginia: National Association of Secondary School Principals, 1981.*

all three districts define weapon possession as a criminal offense, only Chicago requires that police *always* be notified for possession of any weapon.

As with most of the other school crimes discussed, a wide range of definitions and response strategies exist regarding weapon possession and use in America's schools. (Appendix I-B summarizes the policy adopted by the Virginia Beach City Public Schools.

**BEST COPY AVAILABLE**

It defines weapon possession, identifies weapons and outlines required steps for automatic suspension and police intervention in a weapon-related incident.)

### *Child abuse*

Child abuse is a crime defined as “any act of omission or commission that endangers or impairs a child’s physical or emotional health and development. This includes physical abuse, emotional abuse, physical neglect and sexual assault or exploitation.” In the late 1970s and early 1980s, the previously underreported problem of child abuse “came out of the closet.” Today, child-serving professionals are beginning to address the needs of abused children.

Schools have a significant responsibility in combating child abuse. Most school personnel are aware that reporting suspected incidents is not discretionary — it is mandated by law in all 50 states and the District of Columbia. Some state statutes do not carefully define *school personnel*, but regardless of the specific statutory language, at least two steps are always required:

- Staff must identify incidents of suspected child abuse.
- They must report suspected incidents to the proper authorities as designated by state statute within specific time frames.

School personnel are *not* required to substantiate or investigate reports of suspected child abuse in most states. Early reporting of *any* suspicions enables trained professionals to investigate. Breaking the cycle of child abuse will not only protect our children, but it will also reduce crime now and in the future. Abuse victims all too often grow up to be criminals or abusers themselves. Studies indicate that 85 percent of convicted violent criminals were abused children.

(A national directory listing support services and resources for missing and exploited children is available from the National Center for Missing and Exploited Children, 1835 K Street, N.W., Suite 600, Washington, D.C. 20006.)

### *Adolescent suicide*

Every 90 minutes, a young person between the ages of 15 and 24 kills himself. This adds up to more than 5,000 deaths a year — more than 75,000 since 1970. In contrast to a stable suicide rate for the rest of the population, suicide rates among the nation’s youth more than doubled between 1960 and 1980 and have leveled off since then.

While the suicide rate among 15- to 24-year-olds was 5.2 deaths per every 100,000 individuals in this age group in 1960, it had jumped to 12.9 per 100,000 by 1987. According to the American

Association of Suicidology, 4,924 young people between the ages of 15 and 24 committed suicide in 1987. Nationally, suicide is officially the third leading cause of death among 15- to 24-year-olds (after accidents and homicide), and it is the second leading cause of death for the 15- to 19-year-old age group.

Some communities have experienced suicide *epidemics* in recent years. In March 1987, four teen-agers killed themselves in Bergenfield, New Jersey, which sparked a series of "copycat" suicides across the nation during the following weeks, including the deaths of at least six youths in Illinois. In Plano, Texas, 11 young people killed themselves during the 1983-84 school year. Another 11 teen-agers in Fairfax County, Virginia, committed suicide during the 1980-81 school year.

For every young person who completes suicide, another 100 try and fail, some becoming paralyzed or disabled for life. Attempts severe enough to require medical attention are estimated to number approximately 500,000 yearly.

While girls attempt suicide 10 times more often, boys complete suicide five times more often than girls. Whites complete suicide approximately twice as often as blacks. Most at risk is the young, white male. Clearly, youth suicide has become a major health problem in the United States.

No absolute answers have been found for why adolescents attempt and complete suicide in such comparatively large numbers. Mental health professionals have been searching for years for an answer. There is general agreement, however, that adolescents who take their own lives feel hopeless about their situation and believe it will never change. Suicide seems to be a response to an intolerable situation.

Public awareness and concern has grown as the number of children and young adults who are lost to suicide each year increases. Communities are beginning to mobilize. Individuals and groups from various professions are addressing the problem.

School systems, already charged with enormous responsibility for the welfare of youth, now are being challenged to assist with suicide prevention and response programs. School systems are targeted as a key resource because of their influence on the attitudes and behavior of today's youth. Working with community resources, schools can develop effective programs for suicide prevention and its aftermath. Experts in this field have cautioned, however, that suicide programs must be carefully planned and administered with sensitivity. There is concern that some programs will focus student attention on suicide and create a youthful obsession with death. (Table 3-C provides a list of organizations and programs that offer additional information.)

***Most at risk is the young, white male. Clearly, youth suicide has become a major health problem in the United States.***

**Table 3-C**  
**Information Sources on Suicide Prevention**

<p><i>Youth Suicide National Center</i> 1811 Trousdale Drive Burlingame, California 94010 415/692-6680</p> <p><i>American Association of Suicidology</i> 2459 South Ash Street Denver, Colorado 80222 303/692-0985</p> <p><i>Suicide Prevention Center, Inc.</i> P.O. Box 1393 Dayton, Ohio 45401-1393 513/223-9096</p>	<p><i>Suicide Information and Education Center</i> Suite 201 1615 10th Avenue, SW Calgary, Alberta T3C 0J7 403/245-3900</p> <p><i>Peer Facilitator Quarterly</i> Educational Media Corporation Box 21311 Minneapolis, Minnesota 55421 612/636-5098</p>
---	--

### Assessing the problems

When evaluating school crime and violence, educators and law enforcement personnel need a common understanding of what constitutes a criminal act. A mutual definition enables the school community to record all crime and determine existing patterns — when, where and how often it is occurring. When the extent of campus crime is known, school administrators and law enforcement personnel can implement prevention and response strategies. Keeping accurate records is essential to evaluate the success of crime reduction efforts and increase the accountability of the school system to the public.

A survey conducted in 1984 by the National School Boards Association revealed that only 39 percent of the responding districts had a formal, uniform crime and violence reporting procedure, 34 percent used an oral reporting system and 14 percent had no procedure.

Even in districts with uniform systems, crime reporting is frequently inconsistent. Incomplete reporting can result when school site personnel and students are unfamiliar with reporting procedures or are reluctant or afraid to become involved. Students often will not report a crime if they believe school officials are unable or unwilling to help prevent future incidents. Some personnel justify underreporting by falsely theorizing that it promotes the image of a school demonstrating good management and few problems.

To overcome the problem of underreporting, school districts must be committed to designing and implementing a standardized, districtwide crime reporting system. Such a system is more effective if staff input in the design is encouraged and if policy rationale and procedures are carefully explained to school administrators

and staff. Good reporting models can be developed following the local law enforcement Uniform Crime Reporting (UCR) requirements that go to the FBI.

Ideally, a crime incident reporting system should be adopted at the state, rather than the district, level. It is important for this data to regularly be reviewed and interpreted to help determine trends and prevention strategies. New Jersey's Legislature mandated crime data collection in 1982 with legislation that states:

*The Commissioner of Education shall each year submit a report to the Education Committees of the State and General Assembly detailing the extent of violence and vandalism in the public schools and making recommendations to alleviate the problem. (New Jersey Laws of 1982, Chapter 163, Section 18A:17-48.)*

California passed similar legislation in response to a mandate by its citizens, who passed the *Victims' Bill of Rights* initiative in 1982. (This law is described in Chapter IV.)

When no statewide system exists, schools preparing to adopt a record keeping system should consider several issues in the assessment of criminal behavior and the use of the data gathered:

- What potential criminal and violent activities does the school want to assess? Should it examine all potential activities, or should it include only the most serious or common incidents?
- Should teacher and student survey data supplement information gathered from crime incident report forms? Survey information can help administrators determine student and teacher attitudes and involvement in crime. (Appendix II of this chapter includes three surveys. Surveys A and B are comprehensive forms for use by teachers and students. Survey C typifies forms that examine a specific crime issue; in this case, it is youth gangs.)
- What things should the incident report form measure? Those developing the system need to determine if the report form will record only school rule infractions (disciplinary actions), only criminal offenses, or both. If an accurate picture of school crime is desired, both disciplinary and criminal actions should be tabulated. A *crime specific incident report form* requires more detailed data about where, when, how and why a crime occurs. (Table 3-D is an example of a specific report form.)
- Should incidents be filed according to the student's name (offender-based system) or according to the type of incident (offense-based system)? Most school districts maintain offender-based systems that record infractions in the student's file. By adding an offense-based system, school officials also can retrieve information about specific offenses, locations and times. This assists them in locating trouble spots and developing strategies to

Table 3-D

**BOARD OF EDUCATION OF THE CITY OF NEW YORK**  
**OFFICE OF SCHOOL SAFETY**  
 600 East Sixth Street, New York, New York 10009

**INCIDENT REPORT**

				<b>FOR OFFICE USE ONLY</b>		
School Name or Number _____				School Number _____		
School Phone _____				Incident Number _____		
District No. _____				Date of Receipt _____		
Boro _____						
<b>INCIDENT</b>	DATE OF INCIDENT _____ a.m. / _____ p.m.		TIME OF INCIDENT _____		<b>LOCATION OF INCIDENT</b> <input type="checkbox"/> A Cafeteria <input type="checkbox"/> B Auditorium <input type="checkbox"/> C Gym <input type="checkbox"/> D Locker Room <input type="checkbox"/> E Classroom <input type="checkbox"/> F Hall <input type="checkbox"/> G Staircase <input type="checkbox"/> H Courtyard <input type="checkbox"/> I Bathroom <input type="checkbox"/> J Admin. Office <input type="checkbox"/> K Other/specify _____	
	DESCRIPTION _____		<b>TYPE OF INCIDENT</b> <input type="checkbox"/> A Assault <input type="checkbox"/> B Harassment <input type="checkbox"/> C Larceny <input type="checkbox"/> D Disord Cond <input type="checkbox"/> E Robbery <input type="checkbox"/> F Sex Offense <input type="checkbox"/> G Weapons Poss <input type="checkbox"/> H Gang Fight <input type="checkbox"/> I Controlled Subst <input type="checkbox"/> J Bomb Threat <input type="checkbox"/> K Demonstration <input type="checkbox"/> L Suspicious Fire <input type="checkbox"/> M Menacing <input type="checkbox"/> N Homicide <input type="checkbox"/> O Criminal Misch (Vandalism) <input type="checkbox"/> P Kidnap <input type="checkbox"/> Q Trespass <input type="checkbox"/> R Reckless Endangerment <input type="checkbox"/> S Other/specify _____			
	<input type="checkbox"/> Complaint by Victim <input type="checkbox"/> Other/Specify _____ No Victims _____    No Unknown Perpetrators _____ No Known Perpetrators _____    No Unknown Perp. (Firearms) _____		<input type="checkbox"/> Racial Confrontation <input type="checkbox"/> Five Percenter Activity			
<b>WEAPONS</b>	Possession _____ Found _____ If Handgun Make _____ Caliber _____ Serial No _____				Weapon Confiscated By _____	
	<input type="checkbox"/> A Handgun <input type="checkbox"/> D Sand Bag <input type="checkbox"/> G Air Gun <input type="checkbox"/> J Imitation Pistol <input type="checkbox"/> M Other _____ <input type="checkbox"/> B Billy Club <input type="checkbox"/> E Sling Shot <input type="checkbox"/> H Explosives <input type="checkbox"/> K Dangerous Knife <input type="checkbox"/> C Rifle <input type="checkbox"/> F Ammunition <input type="checkbox"/> I Chemicals <input type="checkbox"/> L Dangerous Instruments				Principal _____ Police _____	
<b>ROBBERY</b>	<input type="checkbox"/> Robbery <input type="checkbox"/> Larceny <input type="checkbox"/> Vandalism Transportation Cards (No.) _____ Amount (\$) _____		<b>CONTROLLED SUBSTANCE</b> <input type="checkbox"/> Use <input type="checkbox"/> Sale <input type="checkbox"/> Found Confiscated by _____ <input type="checkbox"/> Principal <input type="checkbox"/> Police			
	<b>VICTIM</b>	Last Name _____ First Name _____		<b>STATUS</b>		<b>RACE</b>
Address _____		<input type="checkbox"/> Student <input type="checkbox"/> Special Ed. Student <input type="checkbox"/> Staff <input type="checkbox"/> Teacher <input type="checkbox"/> Guard <input type="checkbox"/> Other		<input type="checkbox"/> White <input type="checkbox"/> Black <input type="checkbox"/> Hispanic <input type="checkbox"/> Oriental <input type="checkbox"/> Other		
Boro _____ Zip Code _____ Apt _____		<input type="checkbox"/> None <input type="checkbox"/> Refused Med. Treat <input type="checkbox"/> Treated at Scene <input type="checkbox"/> Hosp. Treat _____ <input type="checkbox"/> Hospitalized _____ <input type="checkbox"/> Personal Physician _____				
<input type="checkbox"/> Male <input type="checkbox"/> Female    Date of Birth _____    Age _____    Phone _____ Notification (Parent/Guardian) _____						
<b>WITNESS</b>	Last Name _____ First Name _____				<b>NOTE:</b> Statements of witness should be prepared on plain paper and attached.	
	Address _____					
Boro _____		Zip Code _____		Apt _____		
Phone _____						
<b>PERPETRATOR</b>	Last Name _____ First Name _____		<input type="checkbox"/> By Police <input type="checkbox"/> By Guard P.O. Shield _____    Guard Shield _____ Complaint No. _____    Arrest No. _____ Charge: <input type="checkbox"/> Misdem <input type="checkbox"/> Felony			
	Address _____		<input type="checkbox"/> YD-1 <input type="checkbox"/> Summons			
	Boro _____ Zip Code _____ Apt _____		<input type="checkbox"/> Probation Suspension <input type="checkbox"/> Superintendent Suspension <input type="checkbox"/> Parental Conference <input type="checkbox"/> Other/specify _____			
	Date of Birth _____ Age _____		STATUS: <input type="checkbox"/> Student <input type="checkbox"/> Teacher <input type="checkbox"/> Student Intruder RACE: <input type="checkbox"/> White <input type="checkbox"/> Black <input type="checkbox"/> Hispanic <input type="checkbox"/> Oriental <input type="checkbox"/> Other No. Weapons in Possession _____			
	<input type="checkbox"/> Male <input type="checkbox"/> Female    Phone _____ Notification (Parent/Guardian) _____					

THIS REPORT PREPARED BY: \_\_\_\_\_

Name \_\_\_\_\_ Date \_\_\_\_\_ Title \_\_\_\_\_ Principal \_\_\_\_\_

FORM OSS-731b (REV. 8/81)  
 25-3100.00.3 (1200 PKG./50) 6/86

COPY TO OFFICE OF SCHOOL SAFETY

prevent or deter future criminal acts.

- What incident report form design will maximize accuracy and minimize completion time? Those implementing the program must decide if reports will be completed manually or designed for computer input and analysis. The district's computer resources obviously constitute an important factor in this decision. Some districts already have operating crime reporting and analysis programs and are a good resource for those developing systems. (Information on a computerized crime reporting and analysis program is available from the California State Department of Education, School Climate Unit, P.O. Box 944272, Sacramento, California 94244-2720.)
- Who will complete the forms and how often are they to be submitted to the school and district administration? Any school staff member or student who witnesses an incident should report it to designated school staff. Usually teachers or administrators are assigned to fill out the incident report forms, which are submitted to the school office by the end of the school day. Schools should submit their data to the central district office at least every two weeks.
- Is the information to be used exclusively for the school district, or is it to be available to local law enforcers, the community and the media? Those designing and approving the system determine who will have access to the data. Ultimately, the superintendent and school board determine if it is to be a tool to measure campus problems or part of a public relations effort to alert the community to a growing problem and develop support for crime prevention and intervention.

It is extremely beneficial for local law enforcement officials to be involved when school districts design and implement incident reporting systems. This contributes to a cooperative working relationship between the two agencies responsible for handling a criminal incident on campus. It is recommended that a written agreement, jointly approved by both agencies, be developed to stipulate when law enforcers will assist with campus disruptions, how they will receive school-initiated reports, and what report information will be available to them, as well as to ensure appropriate follow-through in situations that require a student to be placed in police custody.

A regular communication system between education and law enforcement will help both agencies know what happens to the perpetrators and victims of school crime. When their information-sharing systems are compatible, these agencies can be more effective in controlling crime by school-age offenders.

***Students must know that school policies are coordinated with local law enforcers and that substance use and possession are illegal activities requiring law enforcement intervention.***

### **Strategies**

Understanding and assessing school crime and violence are the initial steps in addressing these problems. The next step is action. Collaborative efforts by school personnel, parents and community members are the most successful means of reducing youthful crime, which neither begins nor stops at the school door. Model strategies that are already working successfully in America's schools and communities can offer direction to those developing local programs to combat substance abuse, youth gangs, assaults and weapons, child abuse and adolescent suicide.

#### *Substance abuse and trafficking*

The most popular and widespread strategies for decreasing substance abuse among American students are preventive. Such programs began in the 1960s when juvenile drug and alcohol abuse was first highly publicized. Response strategies also are needed to assist those already involved with drugs and alcohol. Prevention strategies include:

- Clear, firm and well-publicized school policies prohibiting the use, possession and sale of illegal substances help reduce student drug and alcohol use. Effective policies are specific and consistently enforced. Students must know that school policies are coordinated with law enforcers and that substance use and possession are illegal activities requiring police intervention.
- Drug and alcohol abuse information and education projects help prevent substance abuse. School district curriculum policy should require students to take a course that includes drug education and behavioral guidance. Counselors, law enforcers, community leaders and teachers with expertise in drug abuse can speak to classes. Curricula to increase self-esteem, social skills and the ability to "say no" should be included in classes or counseling sessions.
- A number of sports and entertainment figures are involved in anti-drug campaigns and can serve as positive role models for students. Several organizations can provide speakers.
- Consistent and positive school public relations messages to students and the community are effective deterrents. Educators can recruit the media and local businesses to promote messages advocating a healthy lifestyle and discouraging substance abuse.
- Using parents and other community members as additional chaperons for school-sponsored activities on and off campus discourages drug and alcohol use at these events.
- School administrators and interested community members can support the formation of a local campus chapter of SADD (Students Against Driving Drunk). This organization involves

students in the fight against drunk driving. (The national organization, which provides assistance to local chapters, is SADD, 200 Pleasant Street, P.O. Box 800, Marlboro, Massachusetts 01752. 508/481-3568.) Most peer/student support programs are well-received. Faculty and parents can promote "Contract for Life" agreements that are distributed by SADD to teen-agers and their parents. (Table 3-E is a sample contract.)

- Coaches can be influential in discouraging drug and alcohol use by athletes. (Information on specific coach-initiated programs is available from the Drug Enforcement Administration. Publications about the National High School Athletic Coaches Association Initiative can be obtained by writing to the Drug Enforcement Administration, Demand Reduction Section, 1405 I Street NW, Washington, D.C. 20537.)
- Area law enforcers and legal practitioners can participate in law-related education in the classroom. Presentations can address various topics, including drug and alcohol abuse, decision making, peer pressure resistance, positive lifestyles, and alternatives to drugs and alcohol.

**Table 3-E**  
**Sample Students Against Drunk Driving (SADD) Agreements**

*For teen-agers:*

"I agree to call you for advice and/or transportation at any hour, from any place, if I am ever in a situation where I have had too much to drink or a friend or date who is driving me has had too much to drink."

\_\_\_\_\_  
(Signature)

\_\_\_\_\_  
(Date)

*For parents:*

"I agree to come and get you at any hour, any place, no questions asked, and no argument at that time, or I will pay for a taxi to bring you home safely. I would expect that we will discuss this issue at a later time. I also agree to seek safe, sober transportation home if I am ever in a situation where I have had too much to drink or a friend who is driving me has had too much to drink."

\_\_\_\_\_  
(Signature)

\_\_\_\_\_  
(Date)

- Community education campaigns can be organized jointly by the school, PTA and other youth-serving groups to familiarize the community with the local problem and to identify cooperative ways to combat it.
- Communities can seek legislation at the local level in conformity with the federal "schoolyard law" to increase penalties for selling drugs within 1,000 feet of a school.
- School newsletters to parents and community residents can describe the signs and symptoms of drug and alcohol abuse and solicit cooperation to face the issue.
- Schools can sponsor activities which vary from the traditional parties and proms that frequently are associated with alcohol and drug use. (Suggestions for organizing alternative events are available from *Project Graduation*, c/o Alcohol and Drug Education, State House Station 57, Augusta, Maine 04333. 207/289-6500.)

When schools are experiencing a large number of problems related to substance abuse, more aggressive efforts may be required. Successful response strategies include:

- Family-oriented programs, conducted by educators and staff members from community agencies, may be designed to work with substance abusing students and their families to improve family relationships and constructively involve parents.
- Parent support groups, conducted by educators and staff from community agencies, may assist parents of substance abusing students. Support programs help parents so they do not feel ostracized or powerless to influence their children. Groups include Toughlove, Families Anonymous and Alcoholics Anonymous.
- School personnel should have ongoing contact with alternative programs that treat substance abusing youths in order to maintain reliable referral sources.
- School administrators may ask law enforcers to bring drug sniffing dogs on campus if there is reason to believe drugs are hidden there. Be sure to check local court decisions first.
- Undercover police officers posing as students may be very discreetly enrolled in schools so they can arrange to buy drugs from students and make arrests when adequate proof is available.
- School boards can implement policies to help school administrators maintain drug-free campuses. Some districts allow site administrators to require breath or urine tests for students in class or those attending school-sponsored extracurricular activities.
- Administrators and school police/security staff can be equipped with walkie-talkies to enable them to call for immediate assistance when they encounter drug- or alcohol-related incidents during campus patrols.

- When students are referred to community substance abuse treatment centers, the school administrator and arresting officer should monitor the student's progress.
- Re-entry programs can facilitate a smooth transition back into school for youths suspended or expelled and arrested for drug or alcohol infractions. Re-entry programs encourage students to return and remain in school. The progress of each returning student should be monitored by a school staff member working cooperatively with the probation officer.
- Some schools offer academic credit for therapy and instruction that helps free students from drug and alcohol dependency. Academic units for psychology or social science are awarded to students under residential or outpatient therapy.
- It is essential that school administrators understand and conduct *reasonable* searches when illegal substances are suspected. If the conditions of an incident meet search regulations, administrators may conduct searches as an official duty. (Appendix I-D suggests general procedures and specific search techniques.)

*Until recently, school administrators generally have not taken action to stop bullying on campus. Many teachers and other school personnel have been unaware of the problem, or if they were aware they often felt unable to prevent it.*

#### *Bullying and victimization*

Authorities on schoolyard bullying and victimization gathered from around the world at Harvard University in May 1987 to develop a national prevention program for this pervasive problem. The "Schoolyard Bully Practicum," sponsored by the National School Safety Center, was the first-ever meeting of its kind. Practicum participants agreed that five key issues must be acknowledged by the public and school administrators in trying to solve the bullying-victimization phenomenon. They are:

- School bullying is a significant and pervasive problem.
- Fear and suffering are becoming a way of life for victims of bullying.
- Young bullies are more likely to become criminals as adults and to suffer from family and professional problems.
- The prevailing attitude that kids fighting each other are just experiencing normal youthful aggressive behavior must be discarded.
- The United States should follow the lead of Scandinavia and Japan, whose governments have addressed bullying problems with national intervention and prevention programs.

Until recently, school administrators generally have not taken action to stop bullying on campus. Many teachers and other school personnel have been unaware of the problem, or if they were aware they often felt unable to prevent it. But allowing bullying to continue presents serious consequences for schools. School dis-

tricts may be vulnerable to lawsuits brought by bullying victims. For example, a 10-year-old boy sued five alleged bullies and the San Francisco School District for \$351,000 for failing to enforce his right to attend a safe, secure and peaceful school. The victim claimed that the bullies punched and intimidated him daily during the school's fall 1985 term.

Bullying has several other adverse effects for schools as well. It affects school attendance as well as the overall campus climate and safety. Bullying victims also are far more likely than other students to bring a weapon to school to protect themselves. Beyond the obvious reading, writing and arithmetic, today's schools must adopt an additional set of 3 "R's." These are:

- **Rules.** Parents and educators must demonstrate that they are in charge and won't tolerate any student hurting another student either physically or psychologically.
- **Rights.** Every student has the right not to be hurt and the right to learn in a safe environment.
- **Responsibilities.** Educators must be responsible for better supervision and more observant monitoring of the schoolyard. By eliminating fear from the lives of students, the ability to teach is enhanced. Also, students must be responsible for respecting the rights of their classmates and themselves.

In addition, school personnel should take the following steps to help control and eliminate the problem of schoolyard bullying:

- Assess the scope of the problem through a questionnaire directed to teachers and students.
- Communicate clear and consistently enforced behavior standards. Rules against bullying should be part of a larger set of rules regarding school discipline.
- Closely monitor playground activity and be visible around the school. Victims routinely avoid certain areas of the school, such as bathrooms, where bullies are more likely to have freer access to them.
- Provide students with opportunities to talk about the bullying phenomenon, and enlist their support in defining bullying as unacceptable. It should be established that every student has a basic right to be free of fear, oppression and intentional humiliation.
- Never overlook intentionally abusive acts. Bullies need to be confronted, but it should be done in private. By challenging a bully in front of his peers, it may actually enhance his status and lead to further aggression. And showing favoritism toward a victim may simply result in more bullying after the student is outside the protection of the teacher.

- Notify the parents of both victims and bullies about the problem. Schools should help the parents of victims develop strategies for their child to make new acquaintances and promote healthy relationships. The parents of bullies should be urged to monitor their child's activities, to reinforce prosocial behaviors and to consistently use non-physical punishments for antisocial behaviors.
- Establish intervention programs, which might include suspension from school, group or individual counseling and the teaching of social skills.

Bullying is not restricted to the campus or classroom. Parents must get involved. Schools and parents need to work together in combating the bullying problem. Knowing help and reinforcement are available at school and at home is critical to a victim and may cause bullies to alter their ways. Following are some suggestions to help parents detect and deal with bullying:

- *Watch for symptoms.* Victims may be withdrawn, experience a drop in grades, have a loss of appetite, be hesitant to go to school or come home with torn clothes and unexplained bruises. Be suspicious if your child needs extra school supplies or often needs extra lunch money — a bully may be extorting money or supplies. Similarly, if a child takes toys or other possessions to school and regularly “loses” them, they may have been taken by a bully rather than “lost.”
- *Talk, but listen too.* Communicate openly, but don't pry. Encourage your child to share information about school, social events, and the walk or ride to and from school. Listening to their conversations with other children could be your first clue to learning whether your child is a victim — or a bully.
- *Inform school officials immediately.* Keep a written record of the times, dates, names and circumstances of any and all bullying incidents. This will enable you to show school officials that a pattern may be developing.
- *Don't bully your child yourself.* Take a look at your family's discipline measures. Try to teach your child to obey rules by using consistently enforced but non-physical forms of discipline. In many cases, childhood bullies are themselves abused at home by one or both parents. Living with parents who may abuse them teaches children that aggression and violence are effective and appropriate means to attain a goal.
- *Teach your child to be assertive, but not aggressive.* Don't simply tell your child to “fight back” or “just ignore them and they'll go away.” The inclination often is to hit back when threatened, but that may actually cause more harm. Teach children to

***Keep a written record of the times, dates, names and circumstances of any and all bullying incidents. This will enable you to show school officials that a pattern may be developing.***

***Gang association is most likely to occur in neighborhoods with active gangs, and membership should be suspected if the young person associates with gang members, wears gang attire, gets tatoos or starts reproducing gang insignias or graffiti.***

stand up for themselves verbally. Inquire about programs that will boost self-esteem. Encourage children to make friends. Kids who learn how to socialize and communicate with others their own age are less likely to be singled out by bullies.

### *Gangs*

Educators, parents, community members and law enforcers need to understand gangs, their local characteristics and strengths before formulating specific strategies. Those working with young people also need to be able to recognize early behaviors that could result in gang affiliation. Indicators of potential membership in a gang include poor progress in school, truancy, few activities for leisure time, frequent negative contact with police and home problems. Gang association is most likely to occur in neighborhoods with active gangs, and membership should be suspected if the young person associates with gang members, wears gang attire, gets tatoos or starts reproducing gang insignias or graffiti.

Adults should realize that many young people who join gangs do so out of a need for companionship, camaraderie, identity and belonging. Adults who share the responsibility for shaping young people's lives should be familiar with juvenile behavior and work to direct young people into emotionally and socially satisfying activities.

Parents and community professionals can address the problem of gang activity and membership by designing and implementing comprehensive prevention strategies, including:

- Written school policies should state that no gang insignias or clothing are allowed on campus and explain the consequences. Policies should be printed in the student handbook and distributed annually to students and parents.
- Law enforcers and juvenile gang specialists can conduct seminars on gangs for school administrators and staff members. Participants learn how to identify youth gang behavior and affiliation and how to help young people deal with problems that make gang membership seem attractive.
- School and law enforcement personnel should sponsor joint community training seminars for parents and other community members. These programs alert the community to potential and actual youth gang problems and identify ways to alleviate them.
- Schools should develop liaison programs with local businesses that provide employment, on-the-job training or apprenticeship opportunities for students who demonstrate pregang behavior.
- Community service programs should involve students showing pregang tendencies in projects to improve the community environment. Involvement in such projects fosters a sense of pride

and responsibility for the welfare of the community.

- School officials should get an agreement from gang members that the school and grounds are neutral turf.
- Lessons that discourage gang participation and activity and instead propose constructive alternatives should be incorporated into the curriculum for both elementary and secondary students.
- Guest speakers who have been involved with gangs or who deal with the consequences of gang behavior, including law enforcers, prosecutors, juvenile court judges and probation officers, should address classes or school assemblies.
- Faculty members from varied ethnic backgrounds should discuss with students the racial or ethnic motivations for gang affiliation. Staff members also can address the problems causing and resulting from youth gang membership as well as methods to avoid such conflict.

Unfortunately, many schools and communities are unable to prevent gang activity. They may, however, be able to divert gang members from continued involvement by intervening in identified gang behavior patterns and activities. Successful response strategies include:

- Regular communication between schools, law enforcers, juvenile court personnel and the district attorney can provide each group with information. They may discuss gang activity, recruitment, territories and known members. Meetings also allow participants to discuss which gang members are being released from confinement and returned to the community, what new areas are being staked out for gang control and how gang operations can be stifled. Participants also should develop a written agreement defining how law enforcement personnel will respond to on-campus gang activity.
- Areas immediately adjacent to school grounds where gangs congregate and other known gang territories require regular patrol by law enforcers.
- Rumor control centers in the school and community can investigate rumors of anticipated gang activity, clarify the facts, and disseminate the information to educators, community members, law enforcers and students.
- School-sponsored family counseling programs should offer identified gang members and their families the opportunity to discuss gang membership and the possibility of diverting the student from further participation.
- School/community gang programs should coordinate the efforts of street gang specialists and educators to provide collaborative efforts and information that divert students from further gang

***Firm, consistent treatment communicates to students, parents and community members that gang activity will not be tolerated.***

- activity through conflict resolution and recreational activities.
- Gang mediation training for teachers should be offered by community and law enforcement gang specialists. Educators learn to work with gang members to reduce hostility between rival gangs.
  - School and community personnel should jointly sponsor a hot line referral service to aid gang members and their families in crisis situations.
  - Gang leader diversion programs, cooperatively conducted by school, law enforcement and community personnel, provide positive activities for gang leaders. Job training, supervised recreation, sports and other organization affiliations are means to redirect gang leaders.
  - School and law enforcement agencies should co-sponsor a public awareness campaign targeting youth gangs. The campaign should alert the community to youth gang presence and enlist support to control and reduce the problem. A variety of media can be used in the campaign, including radio and television public service announcements, which can be produced relatively inexpensively or often donated by the stations. Display ads, direct mail pieces and even billboards also may be used to communicate messages.
  - Regular meetings between school administrators and the prosecutor can reveal types of gang activity affecting the community, the outcome of criminal charges against individual gang members, and the best procedures to work cooperatively with law enforcers who investigate and prosecutors who indict gang members.
  - Gang-related graffiti should be removed from school grounds or community locations immediately. Be sure to take photos before removal for a graffiti file. Strict sanctions should be imposed for those found guilty of vandalism.
  - Any gang activity or gang behavior occurring on campus must be handled immediately by school officials and/or law enforcers. Firm, consistent treatment communicates to students, parents and community members that gang activity will not be tolerated.

#### *Campus assaults and weapons*

Over the past decade, student and staff victimization has generated public concern that has spawned many programs to reduce and control violence and weapons on campus. Criminal activity on campus can be discouraged if schools and communities anticipate problems and implement preventive measures, including:

- Adopt and distribute a policy stating that anyone guilty of assault, violent crime or weapon possession on campus will be arrested, and the school will vigorously assist in prosecuting the offender. All students and parents should receive a copy of the policy.
- Maintain high visibility of adults in halls and other campus loca-

tions to alert students that any unacceptable activity will be witnessed and handled according to adopted policy.

- Staff development programs can change how educators perceive and relate to non-conforming, troubled youth in the daily school routine. Training provides more responsive procedures and techniques for positive interaction with non-conforming students.
- Lunch-time campus activities and after-school community activities should be designed to separate incompatible student groups or bring together these groups in controlled situations to encourage communication and recreation.
- "Safe corridor" programs identify safe routes between school and home and provide assistance for students and staff going to and from school.
- Law enforcement and medical personnel must teach students and school staff techniques for controlling anger.
- Peer helping can be an effective means of crime prevention. Law enforcers and youth-serving agency staff train secondary students in crime prevention and anti-victimization strategies. The peer helpers counsel with other students, lecture and give demonstrations for elementary school students and community groups.
- Community delinquency prevention committees or task forces should design, coordinate and implement community projects to reduce delinquent behavior. Community members, educators, students and law enforcers can work together in these groups.
- Studies of law-related education (LRE) curricula indicate these programs improve student behavior and respect for the law. Developed by many organizations, LRE curricula describe America's constitutional democracy and its fundamental values, processes and principles. (Additional information is available from LRE National Institute for Citizen Education in the Law, 711 G Street SE, Washington, D.C. 20003.)
- Victim profile training can be provided to school personnel and others in the community. Law enforcers or education specialists can describe the characteristics often found in student and teacher victims and give strategies for preventing victimization. (Table 3-F provides student and teacher victim profiles.)
- Assertiveness training can teach students and school personnel to stand up for their beliefs and rights in a non-aggressive manner.
- The *buddy system* teams potential student victims with other students to prevent assaults in high-risk areas on campus.
- A functioning crisis communication system, which includes phones, alarms, intercoms and a PA system, is essential. A crisis intervention plan that includes getting the maximum number of adults to the scene in the minimum amount of time should be part of the prepared response during a crisis situation.

**Table 3-F**  
**National Student and Teacher Victim Profiles**

Student victims can be characterized by:

*Academic achievement:* Below grade level in reading and math.

*Age:* Either among the youngest or above the usual age for their grade.

*Non-involvement:* "Loners" who feel alienated in several ways:

- They lack the strength and security of being part of a larger group. They have few friends.
- They are easy to identify by race or ethnic group, age, size, handicapping conditions, language.
- They have a record of failures academically, in sports and socially.
- They appear to be alone and different in highly visible ways from the majority.

*Minority status:* Members of groups that are minorities in their schools.

- "Different" students have, unfortunately, always been the victims of meanness and nastiness. Today, the meanness and nastiness is often exhibited in stronger ways.

Teacher victims can be characterized by:

*Minority status:* Minority teachers who are "different" from other teachers are often targeted for victimization.

*Authoritarian disciplinary style:* Teachers who interact with students in an elitist way not only set up an adversary relationship with students, they also set themselves "apart" from students.

*Personal or professional insecurity:* Insecurity about subject matter is one way teachers weaken their positions and become more vulnerable. Poor classroom management also makes a teacher vulnerable. Students sense such insecurities immediately.

*History of victimization:* Once teachers have become victimized and illustrated their inability to defend themselves, they have a strong likelihood of remaining victims.

*Source:* United States Department of Health, Education and Welfare, National Institute of Education, Violent Schools — Safe Schools, GPO, Washington, D.C., 1978.

- Victim witness programs are maintained by youthful and adult volunteers who have been trained in support counseling.
- Student seminars, taught by law enforcers or attorneys, can instruct students and staff about the physical and legal dangers of carrying weapons on campus and elsewhere.
- School personnel must participate in staff development programs conducted by attorneys or others who explain how search and seizure laws relate to the school community. The U.S. Supreme Court, in the 1985 landmark case of *New Jersey v. T.L.O.*, established guidelines for school officials in conducting searches. Student searches must be based on a "reasonable suspicion" that the student has violated school rules

or the law, and the search must be "reasonable in scope."

Schools experiencing assaults, other violent situations or weapons on campus can employ these response strategies:

- School staff or police/security officers stationed at every school entrance can be used to check student identification cards and conduct weapons searches in accordance with search laws. Student searches cannot be random. These officers should have special training in identifying concealed weapons and knowledge of applicable search and seizure laws.
- Staff development programs teach school staff methods to prevent a fight from escalating into an assault.
- Educators, law enforcers and community members can form arbitration or mediation teams to identify and work with violence prone students or groups and potential victims. (See "Project S.M.A.R.T." in the Sample Programs section of Chapter II.)
- Monthly community newsletters, published by the school, inform parents and other community members of arbitration and mediation efforts, weapon control systems, victimization avoidance training and school participation in community intervention efforts.
- Educators and community groups can promote legislation that affirms the right to safe schools for students and staff. Such efforts will alert lawmakers that the public is concerned about this issue and can generate legislation and programs to increase school safety.
- School reporting systems can be established to enable community members, educators, parents and students to anonymously report suspected or actual illegal behavior, including possession of weapons on campus. These reporting systems should be widely publicized, easily accessible and allow the persons reporting to remain anonymous.
- Anti-weapon meetings can enlist the support of community members, educators, law enforcers and gang members in an anti-weapon campaign that advocates arbitration as an alternative to violence.
- Schools can develop follow-up programs to assist with the re-entry of students suspended or expelled for assault or possession of weapons. Follow-up programs may offer educational, vocational and psychological assistance as well as educational alternatives to prevent students from dropping out of school.
- Schools should adopt and enforce written policies and procedures for the immediate arrest of suspects. The policy also should define appropriate arrest and school-imposed consequences that call for weapon possession on campus. When inci-

dents occur, the facts should be systematically disseminated to students, school staff, community members, the parents of the accused youth and the media.

- An interagency team, including educators, law enforcers and health professionals, can provide crisis assistance and referrals. The team can recommend psychiatric diagnostic referral services for offenders and victims.
- The school district can establish a *safe schools or campus climate* department to assist school administrators with investigations of serious crimes, crime prevention, and anti-victimization instruction for staff and students. This department also can serve as a liaison between school district, law enforcement and social service agencies following commission of a crime.
- “Victimization assistance” classes can be provided for students, family members and school staff who have been victims. Class sessions should include discussions of how problems can result when an individual is identified as a “victim type” by others. Programs also identify a victim’s four specific needs — medical treatment, emotional support, financial help and legal assistance.
- School board policies can be established to help protect school staff from physical attacks and to provide reimbursement for loss. (Such a policy, suggested by the National Education Association, appears as Table 3-G.)
- Retraining alternatives for school staff victims can be offered or funded by school districts.
- Some schools stipulate any student suspended or expelled for a weapon incident must randomly submit to a metal detector search as a condition for readmission. Metal detectors have been used daily at school entrances, at school-sponsored events or in situations indicating potential problems.
- Weapon offenders need referral to a community crisis intervention agency, and a designated school staff member should main-

**Table 3-G**

**National Education Association’s  
Suggested Employee Assault Policy**

“The Association believes that when school personnel are the victims of physical attack, verbal abuse, harassment or theft, they should receive the full support of their employer in pursuing legal and other remedies.

“The Association further believes that the local association must have the right to reflect the concerns of the profession at a student suspension or expulsion hearing.

“The Association urges its affiliates to cooperate with juvenile court systems to secure strict enforcement of juvenile law in cases involving disturbances in the public schools.”

tain close contact with the agency throughout the counseling period.

### *Child abuse*

Educators and law enforcers, who are mandated to report child abuse, too frequently encounter young people who have been physically or sexually abused, physically neglected or emotionally mistreated. These child victims present a particular problem for educators because the problems usually originate outside the school setting. Prevention and response assistance must come from both the school and community.

Because child abuse most often occurs in the home or community environment, educators and law enforcers usually are precluded from involvement until after the abuse occurs. These educational prevention strategies have been developed to assist youth-serving professionals:

- Written school policies should explain legally mandated reporting procedures and clarify penalties for failure to report.
- School newsletters, distributed to parents and community members, can describe child abuse indicators; outline procedures for reporting suspected or actual abuse, neglect and mistreatment; and recommend counseling services for victims and abusers. Newsletters also can explain the school's policy for reporting child abuse and neglect.
- School and community seminars, co-sponsored by specially trained educators, law enforcers and other youth-serving professionals, can teach young people how to respond to sexual assault. Seminars stress the importance of reporting *all* sexual assaults to school or law enforcement personnel.
- Public relations campaigns, jointly sponsored and conducted by youth-serving agencies, alert citizens to child abuse and neglect.

Today educators and law enforcers are legally required to report any suspected abuse. Intervention is mandated, and the following response strategies can assist in this process:

- Confidential reporting procedures should be established for students or community members who suspect a student may be suffering from abuse or neglect. (Be sure to check state laws.)
- The educator who makes an abuse report may well be called into court for a custody hearing or criminal case. School district social service personnel must give support and protection.
- Phone numbers for local law enforcement and children's protective agencies can be provided to students, educational staff and community members. The list needs regular updating.
- The numbers for existing toll free hot lines that provide infor-

***A toll free hot line, staffed by community or school staff volunteers, can provide information and crisis counseling to abuse victims and abusing adults.***

mation and crisis counseling to abuse victims and abusing adults should be identified and circulated.

- Local chapters of Parents Anonymous help parents prevent or terminate damaging relationships between themselves and their children. (For information on the program, contact the national office: Parents Anonymous, 6733 S. Sepulveda Blvd., Suite 270, Los Angeles, California 90045, 1-800/421-0353.)
- Immediate reporting is required. (Table 3-H is a sample of the child abuse report form used in California.) Copies of child abuse reporting forms should be readily available to mandated reporting staff.
- School re-entry can be difficult for child abuse victims. Schools can assist by providing positive and supportive experiences. Teachers and other school personnel need to treat the child with respect and dignity, respond with sensitivity to the child's needs and concerns, individualize instruction to ensure success, avoid negative remarks about the abusing adult and continue to watch for new signs of abuse. Counseling within the school setting is advised for youngsters needing individual support.

#### *Adolescent suicide*

The alarming increase in teen-age suicide in recent years has prompted youth-serving professionals across the nation to develop new programs. Preventing teen-age suicide is particularly difficult because experts do not truly understand why young people want to die. Despite this lack of understanding, some successful efforts that may prevent youthful suicides include:

- Districtwide training can enable school nurses and other staff to be alert to suicide warning signs and prevention methods.
- Staff development training for educators and parent workshops can teach adults the suicide warning signs. This enables someone to help before a suicide attempt is made. (Table 3-I lists some of the identified warning signs.)
- Community education programs, co-sponsored by schools, mental health agencies and youth-serving organizations, alert the community to the teen-age suicide problem and enlist support in helping troubled youth.
- Student workshops, conducted by community health professionals and teachers, sensitize young people to the suicide problem, encourage them to look for suicidal symptoms and seek appropriate help.
- Student workshops train students to be peer awareness counselors and conduct peer intervention seminars with "at-risk" youth.
- Community mental health agencies can coordinate with school counselors to develop suicide prevention and response programs.

Table 3-H

# SUSPECTED CHILD ABUSE REPORT

To Be Completed by Reporting Party  
Pursuant to Penal Code Section 11166

<b>A. CASE IDENTIFICATION</b>	TO BE COMPLETED BY INVESTIGATING CPA	
	VICTIM NAME: _____	
	REPORT NO./CASE NAME: _____	
		DATE OF REPORT: _____

<b>B. REPORTING PARTY</b>	NAME/TITLE _____								
	ADDRESS _____								
<b>C. REPORT SENT TO</b>	PHONE ( ) _____	DATE OF REPORT _____		SIGNATURE OF REPORTING PARTY _____					
	<input type="checkbox"/> POLICE DEPARTMENT <input type="checkbox"/> SHERIFF'S OFFICE <input type="checkbox"/> COUNTY WELFARE <input type="checkbox"/> COUNTY PROBATION								
<b>C. INVOLVED PARTIES</b>	AGENCY _____				ADDRESS _____				
	OFFICIAL CONTACTED _____				PHONE ( ) _____		DATE/TIME _____		
<b>SIBLINGS</b>	NAME (LAST, FIRST, MIDDLE) _____			ADDRESS _____			BIRTHDATE _____	SEX _____	RACE _____
	PRESENT LOCATION OF CHILD _____							PHONE ( ) _____	
<b>PARENTS</b>	1. NAME _____	BIRTHDATE _____	SEX _____	RACE _____	4. NAME _____	BIRTHDATE _____	SEX _____	RACE _____	
	2. _____				5. _____				
	3. _____				6. _____				
<b>PARENTS</b>	NAME (LAST, FIRST, MIDDLE) _____			BIRTHDATE _____	SEX _____	RACE _____	NAME (LAST, FIRST, MIDDLE) _____		
	ADDRESS _____			ADDRESS _____					
	HOME PHONE ( ) _____	BUSINESS PHONE ( ) _____		HOME PHONE ( ) _____		BUSINESS PHONE ( ) _____			
<b>E. INCIDENT INFORMATION</b>	IF NECESSARY, ATTACH EXTRA SHEET OR OTHER FORM AND CHECK THIS BOX. <input type="checkbox"/>								
	1. DATE/TIME OF INCIDENT _____		PLACE OF INCIDENT _____ (CHECK ONE)			<input type="checkbox"/> OCCURRED		<input type="checkbox"/> OBSERVED	
	IF CHILD WAS IN OUT-OF-HOME CARE AT TIME OF INCIDENT, CHECK TYPE OF CARE:								
	<input type="checkbox"/> FAMILY DAY CARE <input type="checkbox"/> CHILD CARE CENTER <input type="checkbox"/> FOSTER FAMILY HOME <input type="checkbox"/> SMALL FAMILY HOME <input type="checkbox"/> GROUP HOME OR INSTITUTION								
	2. TYPE OF ABUSE: (CHECK ONE OR MORE) <input type="checkbox"/> PHYSICAL <input type="checkbox"/> MENTAL <input type="checkbox"/> SEXUAL ASSAULT <input type="checkbox"/> NEGLECT <input type="checkbox"/> OTHER								
3. NARRATIVE DESCRIPTION: _____									
4. SUMMARIZE WHAT THE ABUSED CHILD OR PERSON ACCOMPANYING THE CHILD SAID HAPPENED: _____									
5. EXPLAIN KNOWN HISTORY OF SIMILAR INCIDENT(S) FOR THIS CHILD: _____									

SS 8572 (REV. 7/87)

**INSTRUCTIONS AND DISTRIBUTION ON REVERSE**

**DO NOT** submit a copy of this form to the Department of Justice (DOJ). A CPA is required under Penal Code Section 11169 to submit to DOJ a Child Abuse Investigation Report Form SS-8583 if (1) an active investigation has been conducted and (2) the incident is not unfounded.

Police or Sheriff-WHITE Copy; County Welfare or Probation-BLUE Copy; District Attorney-GREEN Copy; Reporting Party-YELLOW Copy

**Table 3-I**  
**Warning Signs of Adolescent Suicide**  
**(for parents, friends and teachers)**

1. *Verbal statements.* Verbal statements about suicide serve as evidence that the teen-ager is thinking about suicide. Overt statements to listen for include:

- "I want to die."
- "How many aspirins will it take to kill someone?"
- "After I'm dead, they'll (you'll) be sorry!"

Indirect, subtle statements asking for help include:

- "It isn't really worth it."
- "I don't want to face tomorrow."
- "My life is empty."
- "It's hopeless."
- "I have these weird thoughts . . . ."

Additionally, references to self-injury, overdosing on Vitamin C and other non-lethal acts are indicators of trouble and depression.

2. *Situational clues.* Certain situations that occur in an adolescent's life provide clues that he/she may be undergoing problems that are too much to bear. Examples include:

- Failing to achieve (failing a class; being cut from an athletic team or event; being fired from a job; having an application for college denied).
- Loss of a loved one.
- Family problems (separation or divorce; lack of communication with a parent; parental abuse).
- Substance abuse.
- Ongoing depression.

3. *Behavior clues.* Sudden behavior changes or atypical actions could prove to be an indicator of suicidal contemplation. Examples include:

- A quiet teen-ager becomes boisterous; a talkative teen-ager clams up.
- Writing a will.
- Giving away prized possessions, like a record or stamp collection.
- Writing a paper that points to behavioral changes.
- Artwork that points to extreme stress or death wishes.

4. *Syndromatic clues.* Studies of suicide victims have uncovered three developmental stages of a suicide syndrome:

- History of previous problems (including family suicides).
- Additional problems associated with adolescence.
- A recent intense period of problems with significant social relationships (boyfriend/girlfriend, parent, teacher, etc.).

*Source: McBrien, Robert J. "Are You Thinking of Killing Yourself? Confronting Students' Suicidal Thoughts." The School Counselor 31, 1 (September 1983): 75-82; and Morgan, L. "The Counselor's Role in Suicide Prevention." The Personnel and Guidance Journal 59 (1981): 284-286.*

- State legislation to provide funds for community and school suicide prevention efforts can be promoted.
- Parent/student suicide prevention workshops can inform participants about the issue and provide the opportunity for parents and teen-agers to discuss together how they can assist in crisis situations.

Once a young person has attempted suicide, these response activities can help prevent further attempts:

- Community-run rumor control centers or hot lines provide 24-hour assistance to troubled youths. These programs also help interrupt *suicide epidemic* patterns.
- School personnel can be trained to identify students experiencing life crises associated with suicide. School staff can refer these youngsters to the counseling staff.
- Trained school counselors can work with students known to be experiencing life crises.
- “No suicide” contracts can be formalized between students, especially high-risk students, and counselors. Such contracts read: *No matter what happens, I will not kill myself accidentally or on purpose at any time.*

### **Sample programs**

Many schools and communities are addressing the issue of crime and violence on campus. The following programs describe some of these efforts. (Note: Schools or organizations with a program that addresses crime against persons are encouraged to submit a description of their program to the National School Safety Center. These programs will be reviewed for addition to the Center's clearinghouse resources.)

#### *Substance abuse prevention programs*

##### **Upper St. Clair High School**

1825 McLaughlin Run Road  
Pittsburgh, Pennsylvania 15241  
412/833-1600, ext. 290

#### *Background and objectives*

In 1979 several students who left the Upper St. Clair High School campus early were involved in an automobile accident that resulted in a fatality. Following this accident, the school developed a program to improve its climate and image. The principals and superintendent set two goals for the program. First, they wanted students involved with drugs on campus to be in a high-risk situation. Second, the administrators wanted to provide the community with a more accurate perception of Upper St. Clair High School.

#### *Program description*

Several measures to combat campus drug use were adopted. Two school police officers were hired to patrol campus. A teacher became liaison between the school and municipal police. A series of public awareness programs was conducted, group counseling was initiated, parent support groups were organized and a drug survey was taken to provide diagnostic information. After Care groups have been established at the high school to provide support for students returning to school from rehabilitation programs.

The project was extended when the school received a federal grant from the Alcohol and Drug Abuse Education Program of the U.S. Department of Education. The additional program, sponsored through Adelphi University's National Training Institute, involved the community in efforts to increase student self-esteem and reduce drug involvement. Funding also has been received recently from the Drug Free Schools program.

A Youth Steering Committee commissioned by the School Board and the Township Commissioners was established to study problem areas related to youth. As a result of a recent study by the com-

mittee, a Parent Communications Coordinator was hired to work with parents to improve parenting style and skills through awareness programs, networks and parent peer groups.

#### *Interagency collaboration*

The program has increased cooperation between the school and municipal police, who now exchange data. Parents and other community members have joined in the campaign. School personnel continue to work with the U.S. Department of Education and Adelphi University staff on programs for drug abusing youth.

#### **STARS (Students Taking A Right Stand)**

P.O. Box 8936

Chattanooga, Tennessee 37411

1-800/476-0714

#### *Background and objectives*

STARS is a national non-profit, school-based (K-12) substance abuse prevention and intervention program serving Hixson High as well as more than 100 schools throughout the United States. The program has been designed to help students refrain from alcohol and other drug use by providing an organized program of value-centered positive peer pressure and caring confrontation by students. It trains teachers and empowers them to address this issue in a positive way.

#### *Program description*

STARS provides both prevention and intervention services to students through a unique system that allows the individual school to take full ownership of the programming and progress. Under the guidance of STARS, a core group of teachers leads the program and activities of the "Students Staying Straight" Group, the prevention program, and the small STARS intervention Care Groups in each school. Parents and teachers are encouraged to provide both positive role models and drug-free activities.

Students in the prevention and intervention programs sign a contract agreeing not to use alcohol or other drugs in any way. This contract binds them through a promise to a larger group of people who have made that same commitment. STARS small Care Group activities help lead teens to an understanding of what substance abuse is doing to them and those around them. The result is a growing number of students who have taken a positive stand against alcohol and other drugs and a large number who have discontinued using drugs as a result of the early intervention program.

*Interagency collaboration*

STARS brings parents, community leaders, corporations, foundations, mental health professionals and students together to work against substance abuse. STARS serves 50,000 students in 10 states.

**School Community Intervention Program (SCIP)**

East Junior-Senior High School  
1000 South 70th Street  
Lincoln, Nebraska 68510  
402/489-7121

*Background and objectives*

The School Community Intervention Program (SCIP) was formed in 1983 after two years of planning by representatives from the juvenile court system, alcohol/drug abuse agencies, schools, PTA's and other interested community groups.

*Program description*

SCIP is a community-based project using an intervention team to assist students with abuse problems. Team members are trained to identify potential and active drug abusing students and make referrals to appropriate community agencies for evaluation. Treatment is done at local agencies with programs for youthful substance abusers. Treatment program personnel, educators and parents exchange appropriate information, which helps students make a smooth transition from school to treatment and back to school. Students returning to school attend on-campus weekly support groups to further ease the transition. Parents are encouraged to assist in the identification, intervention and reintegration process.

*Interagency collaboration*

The SCIP program was initiated through school and community efforts. It is operated cooperatively by the public schools, the Lincoln Council on Alcoholism and Drugs, the Lincoln Medical Education Foundation and the Lancaster County Medical Society.

**Texans' War on Drugs**

11044 Research Boulevard  
Building D, Suite 200  
Austin, Texas 78759  
512/343-6950

*Background and objectives*

Founded in 1980, Texans' War on Drugs (TWOD) is a non-profit statewide organization dedicated solely to the prevention of drug

use, especially among youth. The organization is staffed with prevention specialists who work as regional and statewide coordinators.

The goal of TWOD is the prevention of alcohol and other drug use by young people and the mobilization of drug-free communities throughout Texas.

#### *Program description*

Working in partnership with all segments of society to raise public awareness of the harmful effects of drugs, TWOD organizes concerned parent groups, community coalitions, drug- and alcohol-free youth groups, school-community teams, and community awareness activities. Providing current and accurate information on alcohol, other drugs and related issues, as well as maintaining a resource list of drug-prevention materials, is among the services the organization offers.

Other areas of TWOD's involvement include: making presentations to the community and media; providing consultation and technical assistance; reviewing drug policies, programs and educational materials; serving on boards, committees, task forces and other organizations as drug-prevention specialists; producing adult and youth newsletters; and conducting regional and statewide adult and youth conferences.

#### *Interagency collaboration*

Federally funded, TWOD is administered at the state level through the Governor's Office, Criminal Justice Division, and the Texas Commission on Alcohol and Drug Abuse.

#### **Hudson C.A.R.E. C.A.T. (Chemical Abuse Reduced by Education Community Action Team)**

120 N. Hayden Parkway  
Hudson, Ohio 44236  
216/653-3371

#### *Background and objectives*

In response to growing concern for substance abuse, the community-based C.A.R.E. drug intervention program was developed and now includes a comprehensive program for students in grades K-12. C.A.R.E., established to help eliminate chemical abuse and dependency among Hudson area residents, has as its goals:

- to increase public awareness of alcohol and drug abuse and dependency;
- to provide alternatives to punitive treatment for abusers;
- to teach people to recognize the symptoms of chemical abuse

***Working in partnership with all segments of society to raise public awareness of the harmful effects of drugs, TWOD organizes concerned parent groups, community coalitions, drug- and alcohol-free youth groups, school-community teams and community awareness activities.***

***Because no single segment of society working in isolation can prevent drug abuse, SCPPP encourages schools, law enforcement, community service organizations and parents to work together.***

- and dependency;
- to inform the public that this dependency is a disease which requires treatment;
- to train community members who participate in drug and alcohol intervention and prevention programs; and
- to help schools, parents, churches, businesses and service agencies coordinate programs for substance abusers.

*Program description*

C.A.R.E. has sponsored school assemblies and social activities, published informational brochures listing local treatment resources, and offered classes and lectures, including "Parents Preparing for Adolescence." The organization has trained more than 80 educators and other community members who participate in chemical abuse activities. C.A.R.E. also helped organize Alateen groups, which meet during the school day at the junior high and high school.

*Interagency collaboration*

Volunteers from the community participate in C.A.R.E. Funding is provided by community organizations, and C.A.R.E. classes are offered through the Hudson recreation board. C.A.R.E. works closely with the city police to plan parenting programs, school assemblies and other events. Parenting classes are conducted each fall to teach parents skills for ridding their children of drugs.

**School Community Primary Prevention Program (SCPPP)**

California Department of Alcohol and Drug Programs  
Prevention Branch  
1700 K Street  
Fourth Floor  
Sacramento, CA 95814  
916/324-4398

*Background and objectives*

The School Community Primary Prevention Program (SCPPP) was established by California state law in 1982. It was founded on the premise that drug abuse is a multifaceted problem requiring multifaceted programs to combat it. Because no single segment of society working in isolation can prevent drug abuse, SCPPP encourages schools, law enforcement, community service organizations and parents to work together. SCPPP is jointly administered by the California Department of Education and the Department of Alcohol and Drug Abuse Programs. SCPPP allocates funds to local agencies that work cooperatively with other organizations on programs to reduce substance abuse.

*Program description*

SCPPP has funded a variety of local programs throughout California. Sponsored projects include school and classroom-oriented programs designed to encourage sound decision-making, an awareness of values, an understanding of drugs and their effects, enhanced self-esteem, and social and practical skills that will assist students toward maturity. SCPPP also has funded projects to improve school climate and relationships among teachers, counselors, students and parents. In addition, family-oriented programs aimed at improving family relationships and parent involvement have been selected.

*Interagency collaboration*

As required by the enabling legislation, two state departments share responsibility for overseeing the finances and content of local programs. This collaboration extends to the county level because the legislation also requires joint administration by the county Drug Program Administration and the Office of Education. Historically SCPPP has been supported by community organizations, families, educators, law enforcement, parent groups, drug and alcohol abuse prevention groups, and the clergy. While funding is available for a broad range of projects, they all must incorporate the concept of partnership and interagency collaboration.

**REACH Project Inc. (Rehabilitation, Education and Awareness for Community Humanitarianism)**

1915 D Street  
Antioch, California 94509  
415/754-3673

*Background and objectives*

The REACH Project Inc. was founded in 1970 by the Antioch Police Department and Antioch City Council. REACH is a pioneer program for the state of California in the development of the "linking model," which is the formation of a partnership among law enforcement, schools and community-based programs to combat drug and alcohol abuse and juvenile crime.

*Program description*

REACH targets grades K-12 in the Antioch Unified School District. Four full-time counselors are assigned to the district's secondary schools to teach accredited REACH Skills Classes, which concentrate on decision-making, coping skills and self-esteem. Three half-time REACH Esteem Presenters, who are trained parents, give classroom presentations on drug prevention to

the district's 7,000 elementary school students. In addition, two full-time drug treatment counselors serve both youth and adults.

A police officer, called a REAP officer (Resources, Education, Apprehension and Prevention), works with REACH in the schools. The REAP officer, working in partnership with counselors, is responsible for prevention and apprehension. The officer is selected from the Antioch Police Department, with funding provided by the city of Antioch.

REACH has several other programs, including weekly parent support groups and chemical dependent adolescent groups. Stress reduction counseling and training classes are offered for groups such as Antioch Police Department personnel, AUSD certified and classified faculty, families and a new group especially for children ages 7 to 12. The newly established REACH Institute provides training for other communities interested in developing similar community-based programs using the REACH Esteem Curriculum, which teaches drug abuse prevention to students in grades K-12.

#### *Interagency collaboration*

REACH is a cooperative program of the Antioch Unified School District, Antioch Police Department and community-based agencies. Funding is provided by the City of Antioch, AUSD, Contra Costa Health Services, California Youth Authority and the community.

#### **Project DARE (Drug Abuse Resistance Education)**

Los Angeles Police Department  
150 North Los Angeles Street  
Los Angeles, California 90012  
213/485-4856

#### *Background and objectives*

Project DARE, begun in 1983, is a cooperative effort between the Los Angeles Police Department and the Los Angeles Unified School District. DARE equips youths with skills to resist peer pressure to use harmful drugs. The program is now in 47 states, involving more than 500 police departments.

#### *Program description*

Project DARE targets fifth-, sixth- and seventh-grade students. The Los Angeles Police Department has 57 full-time DARE officers assigned to a classroom beat. School health specialists write the curriculum and train officers to present the special lessons, which provide students with accurate information about alcohol and drugs, teach them decision-making skills, show them how to resist peer

pressure and give them ideas for alternatives to drug use.

Activity-oriented techniques are used by the DARE instructors to involve students in group discussions, healthy exchanges of ideas and feelings, and role-playing exercises. Four introductory lessons are presented in kindergarten through fourth grades to set the scene for later DARE instruction. The junior high program, which operates in conjunction with school counselors, provides early intervention counseling to students with a potential drug or alcohol problem.

#### *Interagency collaboration*

Project DARE is a cooperative program between the Los Angeles Police Department and the Los Angeles Unified School District. DARE programs in other cities also are joint efforts between local police departments and school districts.

#### *Youth gangs prevention programs*

##### **Project COURAGE**

Riverside County Office of Education  
3939 Thirteenth Street  
Riverside, California 92501  
714/369-6460

#### *Background and objectives*

Under the direction of the Greater Riverside Area Urban League, a community-based organization, Project COURAGE was designed to provide youth with positive alternatives that will serve as a deterrent from gang membership and substance abuse. The program is an offshoot of a Gang Violence Suppression Grant awarded to the Riverside County Office of Education by the California Office of Criminal Justice Planning. The grant was awarded to reduce gang membership, suppress gang activity, reduce criminal activity, and advance toward the goal of a safe community. COURAGE stands for Community Organizations United to Reduce the Area Gang Environment.

#### *Program description*

Project COURAGE intervenes to address the problems and issues that confront youth. The program offers tutoring in all school subjects; academic, family and personal counseling; self-esteem, anti-gang, anti-drug, health and nutrition workshops; job placement and on-the-job training; and sports activities. As a deterrent to gang recruiting and substance abuse, the project provides after-school and weekend programs for students.

***Activity-oriented techniques are used by the DARE instructors to involve students in group discussions, healthy exchanges of ideas and feelings, and role-playing exercises.***

*Interagency collaboration*

The program functions by using volunteers from various agencies in the community (i.e., professionals, pastors, Junior League, and concerned parents). The Gang Violence Suppression Grant is a project of several Riverside County agencies, including the Office of Education, the District Attorney, the Probation Department and the Sheriff's Department, as well as the Riverside City Police Department, the Greater Riverside Area Urban League, and Riverside County school districts.

**The Paramount Plan: Alternatives to Gang Membership**

Human Services Department

City of Paramount

c/o Tony Ostos

16400 Colorado Avenue

Paramount, California 90723

213/220-2140

*Background and objectives*

The Alternatives to Gang Membership program evolved after a 1981 city council study session on gang activity. Sponsored by the City of Paramount, the program stresses disapproval of gang membership and actively works to stop gang acculturation and to provide constructive alternatives. Its goals are to discourage pre-teen youths from joining gangs, to eliminate the future gang membership base and to diminish gang influence.

*Program description*

This program sponsors neighborhood meetings and provides special school curricula.

Community meetings are held in neighborhoods identified as *under gang influence* by the Los Angeles County Sheriff's Department and the City of Paramount. The meetings, aimed at the parents of preteen youth, describe the negative aspects of gang membership and provide families with resources and information on gang affiliation and prevention. Meetings, conducted in English and Spanish, are held at parks, schools, churches or homes. Alternatives to gang membership within the community are suggested, including increased family unity, positive parental direction, recreation activities, school programs and community unity.

An anti-gang curriculum for fifth-graders was introduced in the Paramount Unified School District during the 1982-83 school year. It teaches youth the negative effects of gang activity and suggests alternative activities available in the community. The course includes 15 one-hour units presented weekly during a semester.

Lessons, taught by a neighborhood counselor, cover topics including graffiti, peer pressure, tattoos and the impact of gang membership on families. A follow-up program is aimed at seventh-grade students and includes presentations by former gang members, who share what gangs did to them.

#### *Interagency collaboration*

This program, funded by the City of Paramount, unites the school district, law enforcement agencies, parents and youth-serving agencies in the effort to eliminate gangs.

#### **Gang Crime Section**

Chicago Police Department  
1121 South State Street  
Chicago, Illinois 60605  
312/744-6328

#### *Background and objectives*

Begun in the late 1960s as an intelligence-gathering organization, the Gang Crime Section has expanded to include investigative and tactical enforcement of street-gang-motivated crime throughout the city.

The Section's investigative component is manned by Gang Crime Specialists who develop a direct knowledge of the identity, structure, and activities of street gang organizations and conduct routine follow-up investigations of reported crime.

Using this information, crime reports and computer-based incident mapping, the Section's Operations and Analysis Team performs crime pattern analysis, mission development and evaluation to support detachments of the Section's tactical officers.

#### *Program description*

The Section's "Gang Target Program" is a street gang correlative of a career criminal tracking system. Through it the Section monitors the criminal activities of certain hard-core, recalcitrant and violence-prone street gang offenders who come into contact with the criminal justice system. The purpose of the program is to focus investigative, prosecutorial and post-conviction resources by encouraging vigorous prosecution of probation and parole status violation, and notification to select county, state and federal agencies.

The Gang Crime Section is exclusively enforcement oriented; but community awareness and special training seminars are conducted by the Preventive Programs Division of the Bureau of Community Services on a request basis.

*The Section's investigative component is manned by Gang Crime Specialists who develop a direct knowledge of the identity, structure, and activities of street gang organizations and conduct routine follow-up investigations of reported crime.*

***The Street Gang Unit officers review daily case reports and isolate information relating to gang areas or members. They also analyze information on gang characteristics, activities, membership, tattoos, graffiti, vehicles and associates.***

*Interagency collaboration*

The Gang Crime Section maintains a close cooperative association with the Chicago Department of Human Services' Chicago Intervention Network, which engages in a wide variety of crisis intervention and community support projects; the State's Attorney's Gang Prosecution Section; county and state Departments of Corrections, Probation and Parole; and the University of Chicago School of Social Service Administration.

**Street Gang Unit**

Tucson Police Department  
P.O. Box 1071  
Tucson, Arizona 86702-1071  
602/791-5576

*Background and objectives*

This 10-officer unit gathers intelligence on street gang activity, investigates gang-related crimes, and conducts training and prevention/intervention programs. The unit has five main objectives:

- to minimize street gang activity through acquisition and analysis of intelligence;
- to increase the ability of line officers to deal with potentially volatile street gang situations through in-service and roll-call training;
- to conduct investigations and, when appropriate, to exchange information with authorized members of other law enforcement agencies;
- to work with appropriate community agencies and organizations to increase awareness of gang problems and to coordinate prevention/intervention programs; and
- to increase the expertise of officers working on gang cases.

*Program description*

The Street Gang Unit officers review daily case reports and isolate information relating to gang areas or members. They also analyze information on gang characteristics, activities, membership, tattoos, graffiti, vehicles and associates. Patrol officers and field interviews provide information to the unit officers. In addition to the intelligence gathering, the gang unit officers are responsible for training patrol officers to handle gang situations. The unit officers also provide in-service instruction to members of the Tucson Police Department and other law enforcement agencies, and they participate in recruit training at the Arizona Law Enforcement Training Center and the Federal Law Enforcement Training Center.

*Interagency collaboration*

The Street Gang Unit provides speakers for community service groups, school parent meetings and ethnic street organizations. The unit seeks to teach primary and secondary school teachers and administrators about gang behavior and gang-defusing techniques. The unit takes gang education into the schools, providing classroom instruction for grades K-12. The unit also works closely with area law enforcement agencies, County Adult and Juvenile Probation, State Adult and Juvenile Parole, and all local school districts.

*Assault and violent crime***Boston Youth Program**

Health Promotion Program for Urban Youth  
Violence Prevention Project  
1010 Massachusetts Avenue  
Second Floor  
Boston, Massachusetts 02118  
617/534-5196

*Background and objectives*

The Boston Youth Program provides comprehensive medical care to court and school referrals. Contact with these young patients led to increased staff interest in health education. Program personnel applied for and received a grant in 1982 from the Robert Wood Johnson Foundation to develop an adolescent medicine project. An instructional unit was created that encourages students to accept anger as a normal emotion and learn to control anger to avoid violent behavior.

*Program description*

The program has developed into a full curriculum for adolescents. Students are encouraged to play out various anger-producing situations, including peer fights, family violence and interpersonal relationships. The situations are discussed and strategies developed to deal appropriately with feelings of potential violence. Students also learn that if they respond violently to practices they consider unfair, they diminish their power to influence change. The project includes 10 sessions of classroom instruction for two weeks.

*Interagency collaboration*

The project is a collaborative effort funded by the Robert Wood Johnson Foundation and coordinated by the non-profit Boston Youth Program.

### *Delinquency prevention programs*

#### **Mediation Alternative Project (MAP)**

Education Assistance Center, Inc.  
50 Clinton Street  
Hempstead, New York 11550  
516/489-7733

#### *Background and objectives*

The Mediation Alternative Project (MAP) is a service of the Education Assistance Center of Long Island, Inc., a non-profit center for the development of innovative criminal justice and education programs. MAP is supported by the Nassau County Youth Bureau, the New York State Office of Court Administration, and private and corporate contributions. The goal of MAP is to help youth, families, schools and the community resolve youth-related disputes.

#### *Program description*

MAP employs professional, impartial mediators to help disputing parties reach a written agreement. The agreement is reached during a mediation conference attended by all of the involved parties and mediators. MAP also conducts follow-up interviews and meetings. All mediation is voluntary, and MAP services are available to Nassau County (New York) residents free of charge.

MAP is based on the premise that resolving disputes through mediation has several advantages:

- Mediation involves everyone, and all parties participate in the settlement rather than having agreements imposed upon them.
- Peacefully resolving conflicts can keep problems from escalating.
- Mediation involves taking problems out of the court's win-lose setting and putting them into a non-adversarial, neutral setting.
- Solutions reached through mediation last longer because they represent the views of all parties.
- MAP procedures are quicker and less expensive than court processing for minor disputes.
- MAP allows the community to resolve local problems locally.

MAP handles parent/child conflicts, community/youth problems (including harassment and vandalism), school-related difficulties (including fights), restitution for minor criminal acts, neighborhood disputes between families and interracial conflicts.

#### *Interagency collaboration*

MAP works with professional mediators and a variety of public and private entities to resolve disputes.

**ESCAPE (Elementary School Crime Awareness,  
Prevention and Education Program)**

Virginia Beach Police Department  
Crime Prevention Unit  
Public Safety Building  
Municipal Center  
Virginia Beach, Virginia 23456  
804/463-3422

*Background and objectives*

ESCAPE started in January 1982 in response to increased juvenile delinquency. The program's objectives primarily are preventive:

- to identify areas of vulnerability and develop protective measures to reduce victimization;
- to promote cooperation between educators and law enforcers;
- to promote positive and effective communication between youth and law enforcers; and
- to teach criminal justice concepts, law enforcement objectives, and citizen's responsibilities for public and individual safety.

*Program description*

Specially trained uniformed police officers present the ESCAPE program to every fourth-grade class in the city. The six lessons are presented over a three-week period and cover an introduction to law and crime, home security, shoplifting, vandalism and personal safety. Law enforcers developed program content, determined lesson sequence and identified appropriate student populations. After a pilot program at five elementary schools, the curriculum was evaluated and revisions made. Five crime prevention educators have taught the class in more than 64 target schools.

*Interagency collaboration*

ESCAPE was designed cooperatively by law enforcers and educators. It brings law enforcers into regular contact with students and teachers to work on crime and delinquency prevention issues.

**Law-Related Education**

National Institute for Citizen Education in the Law  
711 G Street SE  
Washington, D.C. 20003  
202/546-6644

*Background and objectives*

Since 1971 the Special Committee on Youth Education for Citizenship of the American Bar Association (ABA) has been the national

*ESCAPE was designed cooperatively by law enforcers and educators. It brings law enforcers into regular contact with students and teachers to work on crime and delinquency prevention issues.*

clearinghouse and coordinator for Law-Related Education (LRE). This program assists lawyers, educators and juvenile justice officials with LRE programs for their communities. Under a grant from the Office of Juvenile Justice and Delinquency Prevention (OJJDP) of the U.S. Department of Justice, the ABA sponsors a variety of LRE activities.

#### *Program description*

The American Bar Association coordinates all LRE education programs funded by OJJDP. It meets quarterly with project leaders and promotes the program through various publications. The ABA also has received a grant from the National Endowment for the Humanities to make law and the humanities a regular part of the curriculum in school districts around the country. Grant activities include regional conferences, a summer institute, districtwide in-service clinics for classroom teachers, developmental seminars for principals and administrators, and on-site consultation.

The LRE curriculum informs students about the foundations of a free, democratic society. It covers basic democratic concepts, including *freedom, authority, justice, privacy* and *equality*. Students also study things of special interest to them, including juvenile law, contracts, rights and responsibilities, and the police and court systems. Students are actively involved in their own learning as they conduct mock trials, study court cases, visit courtrooms, ride along on police patrols, and interact with lawyers, judges, police officers, legislators and other law-related professionals.

Research indicates students who have participated in LRE better understand the legal system in the United States, have more constructive attitudes toward this system and less frequently resort to violence. Projects include elementary and secondary students.

#### *Interagency collaboration*

The LRE program was developed by the American Bar Association in cooperation with the Department of Justice, the public school system and the National Endowment for the Humanities.

#### **Community Projects Bureau**

Nassau County Police Department  
1490 Franklin Avenue  
Mineola, New York 11501  
516/535-7920

#### *Background and objectives*

For several years the Nassau County Police Department's Crime Resistance Unit has been divided into two sections dealing with

youth, school and community crime. In 1985 a third section was added to deal with community relations.

- The Youth Patrol Section has 16 officers who serve as liaisons between the precinct commanding officer and the community. They are responsible for seven programs, including regular lectures to all county schools, P.A.V.E. (Police Anti-Vandalism Education Program), Operation Safe Child, the student/teacher Drug Education Program, alcohol enforcement and the summer anti-vandalism patrol.
- The Crime Prevention Section has six officers certified as crime prevention specialists by the state of New York. It provides expertise in security measures, including electronic security systems, locks, mechanical security, security light systems, fencing and physical barriers, personal and vehicle identification, safes, threat assessment and security audits.
- The Community Relations Section has four officers who meet with and establish lines of communication with community leaders and agencies throughout the county. The officers are in charge of the STOP Program (Students and Teachers Opposed to Prejudice). The STOP Program is shown throughout the county to students in the seventh through 10th grades. These officers also are crime prevention specialists.

#### *Program description*

The Youth Patrol has operated continuously for several years, providing classroom lectures to elementary school students on identifying a police officer, using the 911 number, traffic and bicycle safety, dealing with strangers, stealing and block homes. Instruction for intermediate students covers shoplifting, vandalism, drugs and alcohol, fireworks, assault, trespassing, minibikes and BB guns. In high schools the officers discuss stop and frisk, driving licenses and traffic laws, appearance tickets, car searches, the *Miranda* warning, police careers, vandalism, hitchhiking and shoplifting.

Officers also participate in P.A.V.E. (See the Sample Programs section in Chapter IV.) and STOP, a program that teaches students discrimination is not only inappropriate and immoral but also illegal. The intensive unit is taught by educators and law enforcers over two or three days.

The Crime Prevention Section presents public lectures, physical security surveys, and exhibits and displays. It promotes neighborhood watch, child safety and self-defense programs.

#### *Interagency collaboration*

The Crime Resistance Unit integrates police, school and community efforts to reduce crime and delinquency.

***The Youth Patrol has operated continuously for several years, providing classroom lectures to elementary school students on identifying a police officer, using the 911 number, traffic and bicycle safety, dealing with strangers, stealing and block homes.***

***The program's goal is to reduce delinquency by educating students about the three motivating factors behind drug use: peer influence, self-concept and problem-solving.***

**UP TO YOU, Inc.**

Route 2, Box 402  
Sturgeon Lake, Minnesota 55783  
218/372-3234 or 384-4225

*Background and objectives*

UP TO YOU began in 1983 to help young people become aware of the negative peer pressure they encounter growing up. The non-profit program helps young people learn about *self-concept* and its relationship to peer influence. The program's goal is to reduce delinquency by educating students about the three motivating factors behind drug use: peer influence, self-concept and problem-solving.

*Program description*

UP TO YOU provides a package of teaching and training materials for use in sixth-grade classes. It includes a student text, teacher's manual, a drug filmstrip, a review filmstrip, the UP TO YOU card game, a computer disk, achievement certificates, 33 slides for a sixth-grade parent awareness program and a review video.

Sixth-grade teachers participate in a one-day training session to prepare them to teach the program in their classrooms. Four basic concepts are addressed in the UP TO YOU package:

- Peer influence is a major reason youths are "prided" into crime.
- Along with peer influence, self-concept is becoming a major force in the lives of young people and must be dealt with.
- Young people must be responsible for their actions.
- Early intervention in both peer pressure and self-concept not only will help a student feel better about himself or herself but also will decrease the juvenile crime rate.

UP TO YOU meets in half-hour sessions twice a week for 10 weeks. Rap sessions give young people an opportunity to exchange ideas about peer pressure and self-concept. Students visit the local police station and medical center. During free sessions students view movies, participate in role playing and use the UP TO YOU card game. Review sessions reinforce concepts. Pre- and post-testing are used to measure the effectiveness of the curriculum.

A new program is being taught to ninth-graders. Called "Vision and the Master of Improv." the four-day course meets for a half-hour each day. The theme is that everyone is of value and worth.

*Interagency collaboration*

UP TO YOU programs require cooperation between school personnel and community police and correction officers who monitor and identify changes in juvenile delinquency rates.

### *Child abuse prevention programs*

#### **Taking Care of Me**

Simi Valley Unified School District  
875 East Cochran  
Simi Valley, California 93065  
805/526-0200, extension 209 or 238

#### *Background*

*Taking Care of Me* was developed by Sally Newell of the Simi Valley Child Abuse and Neglect Agency (CAAN) and Dr. Herman Kagan and Dr. Kris Eisenhart of the Ventura County Community Mental Health Department. The Simi Valley Unified School District program began at Park View Center School in 1982.

#### *Program description*

The Park View program started with CAAN and mental health training for two teams, each composed of two nurses and one psychologist. Teams present the *Taking Care of Me* seminars to all classes with third-grade students. Role playing is used to teach sexual abuse prevention strategies and encourage reporting. Students also view the film *Who Do You Tell?* Two or three contact people are trained at each school as support resources for concerned children.

*Taking Care of Me* encourages young children to trust their feelings, to distinguish between *good touch* and *bad touch*, and to feel right in saying "no" to unwanted touching. The program also provides in-school resource staff to help sexually abused children. At Park View, posters picturing the contact staff were displayed to enable students to identify them readily.

Parent involvement also is encouraged. Prior to the classroom program, parents attend an informational meeting that includes role playing and viewing the film. Parents also receive pamphlets describing the project. Parental consent is required before students may participate in this program.

Schools adopting the program meet with the local police sexual abuse unit, a district attorney's office representative and protective services staff. Training is available to interested faculty and staff from the Ventura County Community Mental Health Department, district attorney's office, child protective services and the local police department.

#### *Interagency collaboration*

The program was developed by CAAN and community mental health personnel. The PTA initially funded this instruction for

***“Runners” is a runaway prevention program designed for students in grades 6-12.***

***The play focuses on the true stories of runaways, recorded in months of interviews, and tells how these teens found positive alternatives to all forms of “running.” The FBI reports that 10,000 children in this country run away daily.***

primary classrooms. The program now is available to primary students through funding by the Simi Valley Unified School District.

#### **Theater IV**

7½ West Marshall Street  
Richmond, Virginia 23220  
804/783-1688

#### *Background and objectives*

Theatre IV, a non-profit professional theatrical group founded in 1975 and based in Virginia, has won national acclaim for its original adaptations of classic children's stories and dramatizations of the lives of remarkable Americans. The company also has received special recognition for its community outreach programs, which deal with important social problems faced by today's youth. “Hugs and Kisses,” “Runners” and “Walking the Line” are live theatrical productions that deal with the issues of child sexual abuse, runaways, and youth alcohol and drug abuse. Theatre IV serves an annual audience of more than 350,000 children and young people in the seven-state mid-Atlantic region.

#### *Program description*

“Hugs and Kisses” is a nationally acclaimed child sexual abuse prevention program designed for elementary age children. In an entertaining and inoffensive way, the play relates the story of a young girl who is the victim of sexual abuse and how a cuddly dog named Hugs assists her in finding help. The play teaches children the difference between good and bad touching as well as the child's right to say “no” to unwanted touch. It subtly addresses sex abuse victims by elevating their self-image, teaching that they should never keep secrets about touching, and urging them to share their secret with a teacher or other trusted adult.

The “Hugs and Kisses” performances have led to many student reports of sexual abuse, including one that led to the arrest of two men charged with molesting six neighborhood children. In the two years after it premiered in September 1983, the play was performed 275 times in Virginia and 606 children received help for the incidents of sexual abuse they reported.

“Runners” is a runaway prevention program designed for students in grades 6-12. The play focuses on the true stories of runaways, recorded in months of interviews, and tells how these teens found positive alternatives to all forms of “running.” The FBI reports that 10,000 children in this country run away daily.

“Walking the Line” is a drug and alcohol abuse prevention program designed for students in grades 4-12. Relating the true story

of a young girl killed in a drug- and alcohol-related car accident, the show stresses the affirmation of each person's self-worth and the development of refusal skills that enable young people to stand up to peer pressure. "Walking the Line" contains factual information on a wide range of drugs, focusing on alcohol and cocaine, the most popularly abused substances by young people.

A question-and-answer period led by the actors follows each performance of "Hugs and Kisses," "Runners" and "Walking the Line." Students in the audience are encouraged to seek help if they need it, and professional representatives from appropriate social service organizations are present at each performance to respond to questions or give assistance. In addition, each sponsor receives help in organizing teacher in-service training prior to the performance.

The average fee for performances is \$425, approximately half of the actual cost. Theatre IV attempts to make the plays available to any school, regardless of their financial limitations, and state grants and private donations help fund the program.

#### *Interagency collaboration*

"Hugs and Kisses" is co-produced in Virginia by the Virginia Chapter of the National Committee for Prevention of Child Abuse and in Texas by the Greater Houston Committee for Prevention of Child Abuse and the San Antonio Coalition for Children, Youth and Families. "Runners" is co-produced by the National Network of Runaway and Youth Services, with major support for the production provided by the Virginia Association of Realtors. Social workers and law enforcers also contribute to the success of these programs.

#### **Broward County School Board Child Abuse Program**

School Social Work and Attendance  
1400 NE Sixth Street  
Pompano Beach, Florida 33060  
305/786-7668

#### *Background and objectives*

The county's child abuse program was initiated following passage of the Safe Schools Act, a state mandate to develop preventive strategies to ensure secure learning environments. The Broward County School Board developed this program to facilitate reporting incidences of child abuse and neglect within the school system. Other county school efforts to fulfill the safe school mandate include parent education, peer and family counseling, learning centers, and truancy, alcohol and drug abuse prevention programs.

*Program description*

The county has developed and implemented a child abuse and neglect training curriculum for use in staff development. It also has provided curriculum development for grades K-12 through the school board's Health Education Curriculum Department, established liaisons between the school system and community agencies, and furnished consultants to assist educators with the initial assessment of suspected cases of child abuse and neglect.

The program provides training to teachers, psychologists, guidance counselors and school administrators. Staff members also serve as consultants for cases in which child abuse and neglect is suspected.

*Interagency collaboration*

This program evolved in response to a legislated mandate. It provides coordinated efforts by the schools and community service agencies to combat child abuse and neglect.

*Suicide prevention programs***Guidance Services****Traverse City Area Junior High School**

Post Office Box 32

Traverse City, Michigan 49685-0032

616/922-6700

*Background and objectives*

Traverse City Area Junior High School's counselors are trained to recognize the signs indicating that a student may be potentially suicidal. Counselors also are instructed in what to do to prevent suicides.

*Program description*

School guidance counselors at the junior high have been trained to be sensitive to the stresses students encounter from family situations involving divorce, alcoholism or chemical abuse. The junior high provides regularly scheduled group counseling sessions for students with similar problems in these areas.

*Interagency collaboration*

The junior high school counseling staff works cooperatively with community agencies and, when appropriate, makes referrals to organizations, including Alateen and Third Level Crisis Intervention Center, funded by the Michigan Department of Social Services and the Office of Criminal Justice.

**Teen Suicide Prevention, Intervention, Response Project**

Four Winds Hospital  
800 Cross River Road  
Katonah, New York 10536  
914/763-8151, extension 413

*Background and objectives*

Four Winds is a 225-bed private psychiatric hospital in Westchester County, New York. More than one-third of the bed space at Four Winds is used for adolescent patients. During a one-and-one-half-year period prior to 1984, Westchester and adjacent counties experienced an epidemic of 19 teen suicides. Several area schools approached the Four Winds staff to request help in counseling parents and faculty in the aftermath of the suicides. Since the 1984-85 school year, the number of teen suicides in the area has steadily decreased.

*Program description*

In response to requests for assistance during this suicide crisis period, a group of educators and hospital staff developed a half-day training seminar to prepare participants to work with students, parents and other faculty members. Later, a one-day conference featuring speakers with expertise in suicide was held. Participants received a suicide prevention handbook and a resource guide. While this project no longer is active, a limited number of the suicide prevention handbooks are available at no cost. After-school seminars are now being conducted on suicide prevention.

*Interagency collaboration*

This project represented the joint efforts of a private health care facility and the public school system.

**Depression and Suicide Program for High School Students**

Mental Health Association of Westchester  
Interagency Task Force  
29 Sterling Avenue  
White Plains, New York 10606  
914/949-6741

*Background and objectives*

After this community experienced a series of teen suicides, the Commissioner of Mental Health requested an interagency task force be established to develop a teen suicide prevention curriculum. The Mental Health Association of Westchester, which staffs the area's crisis suicide line, was asked to sponsor the task force

***Instructors found that when students heard the high-risk issue of teen-age suicide presented in a straightforward manner, they were more comfortable discussing lesser-risk issues such as teen pregnancy and substance abuse, which they had been unwilling to discuss previously.***

developing the curriculum, training programs and materials for school staff development.

*Program description*

The suicide prevention curriculum includes several films developed by Human Relations Media, 175 Tomkins, Pleasantville, New York 10570 (914/769-7496). Before the program is taught to students in the classroom, it is presented to the superintendent of schools, school board members, site administrators, teachers and parents.

*Interagency collaboration*

This program represents an interagency effort by youth-serving agencies to create a curriculum addressing teen suicide.

**ASAP (Adolescent Suicide Awareness Program)**

South Bergen Mental Health Center, Inc.  
516 Valley Brook Avenue  
Lyndhurst, New Jersey 07071  
201/935-3322

*Background and objectives*

The South Bergen Mental Health Center, Inc., began in 1980 as a pilot program. Recently it was funded to train others to replicate the program throughout the county. To date, the Adolescent Suicide Awareness Program (ASAP) has been expanded to about 75 percent of the schools in Bergen County and has served as a model program for other communities throughout the tri-state area. ASAP has been introduced in more than 200 schools, training more than 20,000 teachers, teen-agers and parents. Educators have observed that ASAP offers another benefit in addition to its contributions to suicide prevention. Instructors found that when students heard the high-risk issue of teen-age suicide presented in a straightforward manner, they were more comfortable discussing lesser-risk issues such as teen pregnancy and substance abuse, which they had been unwilling to discuss previously.

*Program description*

Students in the ninth and 10th grades at sponsor schools participate in the curriculum after it has been approved by the superintendent, school board, site administrators and classroom teachers. School guidance staff members are trained to participate in the classroom presentations. ASAP sessions usually generate between two to five referrals to the school counseling center. A pilot program called SELF helps students in grades six to eight focus on self-esteem and coping skills.

*Interagency collaboration*

The ASAP project is the joint effort of a community mental health program and the schools.

**Children & Grief: Living with Loss**

P.O. Box 50399

Jacksonville Beach, Florida 32240-0399

904/241-2182

*Background and objectives*

“Children & Grief: Living with Loss” is a prevention program that assists schools and agencies in establishing a mechanism to identify and help “at-risk” children in pain from separation, divorce, death, neglect and abuse. One of the program’s goals is to empower these children by strengthening their belief in themselves and by helping them to live, manage and cope with pain.

Program objectives are:

- to provide an identification and referral system in the school or agency setting for children who have experienced loss;
- to demonstrate how simple changes can be made in the school and agency environment that will enhance the child’s ability to succeed;
- to implement a counseling program within the school or agency setting which standardizes counseling interventions that follow the stages of grief;
- to teach children to understand loss as a lifelong process and to put in motion healthy coping patterns they can draw upon when needed — the patterns for dealing with loss are set in childhood for good or for ill; and
- to provide school and agency personnel with the confidence needed to handle broad and catastrophic losses, such as murder, suicide and accidental death.

*Program description*

When the “Children & Grief” program is implemented in a school district, a preliminary fact-finding meeting and needs assessment is conducted with district administrative personnel. The program focuses on one- and two-day workshops that train local school personnel to help students in their district deal with grief. The actual sessions include two-day intensive training for counselors; one-day training with administrative personnel and area leaders; specialized training with the crisis teams from each school; and meetings with the superintendent, assistant superintendent, research and evaluation staff, principal, PTA and parents.

An identification and referral system is established at each school to provide students who have experienced a loss with information, coping skills and emotional support to help them adjust, reach their full academic potential and exhibit positive school behavior. Follow-up sessions and an end-of-year review session with counselors, crisis teams and administrative personnel are an important part of the program.

*Interagency collaboration*

Living With Loss, Inc. is a non-profit organization. Originally co-sponsored by Hospice Northeast, the program prepares and trains various community and religious organizations and educators for the occurrences of accidents, suicides and murders via a Broad Loss Plan.

---

## Bibliography

- Akers, Ronald. "Delinquent Behavior, Drugs and Alcohol: What Is the Relationship." *Today's Delinquent* 3 (1984):19-48.
- Abelson, Herbert, and Fishburne, Patricia M. *Nonmedical Uses of Psychoactive Substances*. Princeton, New Jersey: Response Analysis Corporation, 1976.
- Bell, E., and Semmel, E. "A Rationale and Model For the Training of Educational Specialists to Work With Disruptive Youth." *Theoretical Perspectives on School Crime and Poverty*. Edited by Robert Rubel. Springfield, Virginia: National Technical Information Service, 1979.
- Bolton, I. *My Son . . . My Son*. 1325 Belmore Way, NE, Atlanta, Georgia 30338, 1983.
- California Department of Justice, Office of the Attorney General. *Report on Youth Gang Violence in California*. Sacramento, California: California Department of Justice, Office of the Attorney General, June 1981.
- California School Employees Association. "Classified Employees Report on Crime in Schools." *CSEA Bulletin*, May 1984.
- Cavan, Ruth. *Juvenile Delinquency: Development, Treatment and Control*. New York: Lippincott Company, 1969.
- Cloward, Richard A., and Ohlin, Lloyd E. *Delinquency and Opportunity: A Theory of Delinquent Gangs*. New York: Free Press, 1960.
- Cohen, Albert D. *Delinquent Boys: The Culture of the Gang*. New York: Free Press, 1955.
- Coleman, J. "Deviant Subcultures and the Schools." *Violence and Crime in the Schools: Theoretical Perspectives*. Edited by Keith Baker and Robert Rubel. Lexington, Massachusetts: D.C. Heath & Co., 1980.
- Crain, R.L., and Wu, S.C. "The Role of the School in Determining School Crime Rates." Paper presented to the annual meeting of the American Psychological Association in Toronto, Canada, 1978.

Ducey, M. "Vandalism in High Schools: An Exploratory Discussion." *Violence and Crime in the Schools: Theoretical Perspectives*. Edited by Keith Baker and Robert Rubel. Lexington, Massachusetts: D.C. Heath & Co., 1980.

Duke, D.L. "Student Behavior, The Depersonalization of Blame, and the Society of Victims." *Violence and Crime in the Schools: Theoretical Perspectives*. Edited by Keith Baker and Robert Rubel. Lexington, Massachusetts: D.C. Heath & Co., 1980.

Duke, D.L., and Meckel, A. "Disciplinary Roles in American Schools." *Violence and Crime in the Schools: Theoretical Perspectives*. Edited by Keith Baker and Robert Rubel. Lexington, Massachusetts: D.C. Heath & Co. 1980.

Elkind, David. *The Hurried Child: Growing Up Too Fast Too Soon*. Reading, Massachusetts: Addison-Wesley, 1981.

Feldhusen, J.F.; Benning, J.J.; and Thurston, J.R. "A Longitudinal Study of Delinquency and Other Aspects of Children's Behavior." *International Journal of Criminology and Penology* 1 (1973).

Feldhusen, J.R.; Roeser, T.D.; and Thurston, J.R. "Prediction of Social Adjustment Over a Period of Six or Nine Years." *Journal of Special Education* 11 (1977):29-36.

Fishburne, Patricia; Abelson, Herbert; and Cisin, Ira. *National Survey on Drug Abuse*. Washington, D.C.: Northeastern University, 1983.

Fox, James Allen. "Violence, Victimization, and Discipline in Four Boston Public High Schools." Boston, Massachusetts: Northeastern University, 1983.

Frease, D.E. "Schools and Delinquency: Some Intervening Processes." *Pacific Sociological Review* 16 (1973):426-48.

Giovacchini, Peter. *The Urge to Die: Why Young People Commit Suicide*. New York: Penguin, 1983.

Gold, Martin. "Scholastic Experiences, Self-Esteem, and Delinquent Behavior: A Theory for Alternative Schools." *Crime and Delinquency* 24 (1978):290-94.

Gottfredson, Gary. *Disruption in 600 Schools — The Social Ecology of Personal Victimization in the Nation's Public Schools*. Baltimore, Maryland: Johns Hopkins University, Center for Social Organization of Schools, 1979.

Green, Richard. "Summary Statistics From the Los Angeles School Security Section." Los Angeles, California, 1976 (unpublished data).

Grollman, Earl A., ed. *Suicide: Prevention, Intervention, Postvention*. Boston, Massachusetts: Beacon Press, 1971.

Halatyn, Thomas V., and Rubel, Robert J. *Juvenile Crime Causes and the Public Schools: An Assessment of Existing Research*. College Park, Maryland: Institute for the Reduction of Crime, January 1982.

Hartstone, Eliot, and Hansen, Karen V. "The Violent Juvenile Offender: An Empirical Portrait." *Violent Juvenile Offenders: An Anthology*. Edited by Robert A. Mathias, Paul DeMuro and Richard S. Allinson. San Francisco, California: National Council on Crime and Delinquency, 1984.

Hewett, John H. *After Suicide*. Philadelphia, Pennsylvania: Westminster, 1980.

Johnston, Lloyd. *Drugs and American Youth*. Ann Arbor, Michigan: Institute for Social Research, 1973.

Johnston, Lloyd; Bachman, Gerald G.; and O'Malley, Patrick. *Student Drug Use in America*. Washington, D.C.: Government Printing Office, 1982.

Jones, J. William. *Discipline Crisis in the Schools: The Problems, Causes and Search for Solution*. Washington, D.C.: National School Public Relations Association, 1973.

Kaplan, W. "Rebellion Against Authority in High Schools." *Theoretical Perspectives*. Edited by Robert Rubel. Baltimore, Maryland: Johns Hopkins University, Center for Social Organization of Schools, 1979.

Kiev, Ari. *The Courage to Live*. New York: Bantam, 1981.

Klagsbrun, Francine. *Too Young To Die: Youth and Suicide*. New York: Pocket Books, 1986.

Klein, Malcolm W. *Street Gangs and Street Workers*. Englewood Cliffs, New Jersey: Prentice-Hall, 1971.

Liazos, A. "School, Alienation, and Delinquency." *Theoretical Perspectives*. Edited by Robert Rubel. Baltimore, Maryland: Johns Hopkins University, Center for Social Organization of Schools, 1979.

Los Angeles County Superintendent of Schools. *1983-84 Annual Bulletin of the Division of Attendance, Pupil, and Administrative Services*. Los Angeles, California: Office of the Los Angeles County Superintendent of Schools, 1984.

Los Angeles Unified School District, Office of the Superintendent. *Causes of and Possible Solutions to Campus Violence*. Los Angeles, California: Los Angeles Unified School District, Office of the Superintendent. March 15, 1979.

Louis, Karen. "Boston Teachers' View About Problems of Violence and Discipline in the Public Schools." Boston, Massachusetts: Boston Safe School Commission, 1983.

Magri, Michelle. "Youth and Alcohol Abuse." *Alcohol and Drug Report*. April 1983, pp. 1-8.

Marrola, J.; McGrath, J.; and Williams, J.S. "Schools: Antiquated Systems of Social Control." *Theoretical Perspectives*. Edited by Robert Rubel. Baltimore, Maryland: Johns Hopkins University, Center for Social Organization of Schools, 1979.

McBrien, Robert J. "Are You Thinking of Killing Yourself? Confronting Students' Suicidal Thoughts." *The School Counselor* 31, 1 (September 1983):75-82.

McCoy, Kathleen. *Coping With Teenage Depression: A Parent's Guide*. New York: NAL, 1982.

McGowan, William N. "Crime Control in Public Schools: Space Age Solutions." *National Association of Secondary School Principals Bulletin*, April 1973, pp. 43-48.

McPartland, J.M., and McDill, E.L. *Violence in Schools: Perspectives, Programs, and Positions*. Lexington, Massachusetts: Lexington Books, 1977.

Miller, Judith D; Cisin, Ira; Garner-Deaton, Hilary; Harrell, Adele; Wirtz, Philip; Abelson, Herbert; and Fishburne, Patricia. *National Survey on Drug Abuse: Main Findings, 1982*. Washington, D.C.: Government Printing Office, 1983.

Miller, Patricia. "Teenage Suicide." *Sacramento Bee*, April 17, 1983.

Miller, Walter B. "American Youth Gangs: Past and Present." *Current Perspectives on Criminal Behavior: Original Essays on Criminology*. Edited by Abraham S. Blumberg, 2d ed. New York: Knopf, 1981, pp. 291-320.

Miller, Walter B. *Crime by Youth Gangs and Groups in the United States*. Washington, D.C.: U.S. Department of Justice, Law Enforcement Assistance Administration, National Institute of Juvenile Justice and Delinquency Prevention, 1975.

Miller, Walter B. *Violence by Youth Gangs and Youth Groups as a Crime Problem in Major American Cities*. Washington, D.C.: U.S. Department of Justice, Law Enforcement Assistance Administration, National Institute of Juvenile Justice and Delinquency Prevention, 1975.

Moles, Oliver C. "Trends in Interpersonal Crimes in Schools." Washington, D.C.: U.S. Department of Education, National Institute of Education, September 12, 1983.

Moore, Joan W., with Garcia, Robert, et al. *Homeboys: Gangs, Drugs, and Prison in the Barrios of Los Angeles*. Philadelphia, Pennsylvania: Temple University Press, 1978.

Morgan, L. "The Counselor's Role in Suicide Prevention." *The Personnel and Guidance Journal* 59 (1981):284-86.

Mullens, Gerald. *Preventing Student Violence and Vandalism*. California School Boards Association, 1978.

National School Boards Association. *Survey on School Discipline*. Washington, D.C.: National School Boards Association, June 1984 (unpublished data).

National School Resource Network and American Association of School Administration. *Reporting: Violence, Vandalism and Other Incidents in Schools*. Arlington, Virginia: National School Resource Network and American Association of School Administration, 1981.

National School Safety Center. *Gangs in Schools: Breaking Up is Hard to Do*. Malibu, California: Pepperdine University Press, 1988.

National School Safety Center. "Set Straight on Bullies" (film/tape). NSSC, Pepperdine University, Malibu, California 90265, 1988.

National School Safety Center. "What's Wrong With This Picture?" (film/tape). NSSC, Pepperdine University, Malibu, California 90265, 1986.

Needle, Jerry, and Stapleton, W. Vaughn. *Police Handling of Youth Gangs*. Washington, D.C.: U.S. Department of Justice, 1984.

Olweus, Dan. *Aggression in the Schools: Bullies and Whipping Boys*. New York: John Wiley and Sons, Inc., 1978.

Pacific Institute for Research and Evaluation. *School Drug Policy: Review and Recommendations*. Bethesda, Maryland: Pacific Institute for Research and Evaluation, January 1981.

Philadelphia School District. *Report of the Task Force on School Safety*. Philadelphia, Pennsylvania: School District of Philadelphia, June 1983.

Pink, W.T., and Kapel, D.E. "Citizen Involvement in Educational Decision-Making as a Deterrent to School Crime and Delinquency." *Theoretical Perspectives*. Edited by Robert Rubel. Baltimore, Maryland: Johns Hopkins University, Center for Social Organization of School, 1979.

Polly, Joan. *Preventing Teenage Suicide*. New York: Herman Services Press, 1986.

Rosenfeld, Linda, and Prupas, Marilynne. *Left Alive: After A Suicide Death in the Family*. Springfield, Illinois: Charles C. Thomas, 1984.

Rubel, Robert. *Unruly Schools: Disorders, Disruptions, and Crimes*. Lexington, Massachusetts: D.C. Heath, 1977.

San Diego City Schools. "Police Services Department: Crime Totals, School Year 1983-84." San Diego, California: San Diego City Schools, 1984.

Spergel, Irving. *Racketville, Slumtown, Haulberg: An Exploratory Study of Delinquent Subcultures*. University of Chicago Press, 1964.

Toby, Jackson. "Crime in the Schools." *Encyclopedia of Crime and Justice*. Edited by Sanford H. Kadish. New York: The Free Press, 1973, pp. 1407-1410.

Twinaime, B. "No Suicide Contract for Nurses." *Journal of Psychiatric Nursing and Mental Health Services* 19 (1981):11-12.

U.S. Congress, Senate Committee on the Judiciary, Subcommittee to Investigate Juvenile Delinquency, 85th Congress, 2nd Session. *Report No. 137*. Washington, D.C.: Government Printing Office, 1959.

U.S. Congress, Senate Committee on the Judiciary, Subcommittee to Investigate Juvenile Delinquency. *School Violence and Vandalism: The Nature, Extent, and Cost of Violence and Vandalism in Our Nation's Schools*. Washington, D.C.: Government Printing Office, 1976.

U.S. Department of Education, National Institute of Education. *Violent Schools — Safe Schools: The Safe School Study Report to Congress*. Washington, D.C.: Government Printing Office, 1978.

U.S. Department of Health, Education and Welfare, Office of Education, National Center for Education Statistics. *Survey of Offenses and Property Losses — Disclaimers and Data Limitations*. Washington, D.C.: Government Printing Office, December 1976.

U.S. Department of Justice, National Institute of Justice. *Reducing School Crime and Student Misbehavior: A Problem-Solving Strategy*. Washington, D.C.: Government Printing Office, September 1985.

Wells, Elmer. *Vandalism and Violence: Innovative Strategies Reduce Cost to Schools*. Washington, D.C.: National School Public Relations Association, 1973.

Wisconsin Department of Health and Social Services, Division of Policy and Budget. *Intra-Family Sexual Abuse in Wisconsin: A Study of Prevalence, System Response, and Needs*. Madison, Wisconsin: Department of Health and Social Services, Division of Policy and Budget, 1982.

Yablonsky, Lewis. *The Violent Gang*. New York: Macmillan, 1962.

## Appendix I

### District Policies and Procedures-A

#### The Basic Rules of Seattle Public Schools (August 1987):

#### *Things No One is Allowed to Do*

##### *Criminal offenses*

All of the behaviors on the list below are crimes under city, state or federal law and are prohibited. Students who engage in any of these criminal behaviors may have criminal charges brought against them. If students commit any of these crimes **or any other crime** while in school, on school grounds, on school district-sponsored transportation or at any school-sponsored event, they will be disciplined by the school district and normally will also be referred to the police to face criminal charges.

The school board has determined that these offenses and other crimes amount to "exceptional misconduct" warranting suspension for the first offense, provided that disciplinarians and hearing officers may grant exceptions in cases involving extenuating or exceptional circumstances, or after considering the background of the individual student.

- *Alcoholic beverages, illegal drugs and controlled substances:* Possessing, using, selling, distributing or being under the influence of alcohol, drugs or controlled substances.
- *Arson:* Intentional setting of a fire or causing an explosion.
- *Assault:* Being physically violent toward or making threats of violence to or taking indecent liberties with another person.
- *Burglary:* Entering or remaining unlawfully in a building with intent to commit a crime.
- *Extortion, blackmail, coercion:* Obtaining money or property by violence or threat of violence or forcing someone to do something against his or her will by force or threat of force.
- *False alarm:* Activating a fire alarm for other than the intended purpose of the alarm.
- *Interference with school authorities:* Interfering with the discharge of the official duties of district personnel by force or violence.
- *Intimidation of school authorities:* Interfering with the discharge of the official duties of district personnel by intimidation with threat of force or violence.
- *Malicious harassment:* Maliciously and intentionally intimidating or harassing another person because of that person's race, color, religion, ancestry or national origin.

- *Malicious mischief*: Intentionally causing damage to any property (including graffiti).
- *Possession of stolen property*: Knowingly receiving, retaining, possessing, concealing or disposing of stolen property.
- *Robbery*: Taking another's property by force or threat of force.
- *Theft*: Stealing.
- *Trespass*: Entering or remaining unlawfully in school buildings or on any part of school grounds.
- *Weapons and explosives*: Possessing or using weapons, explosives or other items capable of causing bodily harm.

### ***School district offenses***

In addition to criminal offenses, students are not allowed to engage in behaviors that disrupt or interfere with the educational process. Participation in any of the following behaviors in school, on school grounds, on school district-sponsored transportation or at any school-sponsored event may lead to disciplinary action.

- *Disruptive conduct*: Any conduct that interferes with the educational process, or with extracurricular activities, including such things as acts of hostility, abuse or harassment, whether verbal or physical, the disruptive use of radios and tape decks on school grounds, etc.
- *Fighting*: Mutual physical contact involving anger or hostility.
- *Fireworks*: Possession, use, distribution or sale of firecrackers or common fireworks.
- *Misrepresentation*: (a) Forging parent's, guardian's or any other person's signatures on any letter to the school or on any school document; or (b) cheating or plagiarizing, turning in another person's papers, projects, computer programs, etc., as your own.
- *Smoking or chewing tobacco*: Smoking or chewing tobacco anywhere, anytime, except in designated smoking areas for high school students at some high schools.
- *Rule-breaking*: Breaking school or school district rules.
- *Non-attendance*: Unexcused failure to attend all classes every day on time.
- *Disobedience*: Failure to comply with or follow the instructions of teachers and other school staff.

In addition to the above rules, each school will adopt and distribute to each student rules which will govern a student's conduct in that particular school. When students break the school rules, they will be disciplined.

**District Policies and Procedures-B  
Virginia Beach City Public Schools  
Department of Instructional Services**

*Safe Schools Plan*

**Issue:** Weapons

**Goal:** The weapons policy will be strictly enforced.

**Strategies:**

1. Adopt a written policy for weapons violations.  
WEAPONS. (Ref. *SBP* 5136)  
A student shall not supply, handle, use, transmit or have in his/her possession a dangerous instrument or weapon on school property, on his/her way to or from school or at any school-sponsored event. The following items will be defined as dangerous weapons: (1) firearms; (2) knives; (3) any object which is designed or used to inflict bodily injury or place a person in fear of his/her safety or well-being; and (4) any object which can be reasonably considered to be a weapon.
2. Define procedures for weapons violations incidents.
  - a. Confiscate all weapons, immediately if possible; and
  - b. Relinquish the custody of all weapons to the police department.
3. Define appropriate school response and arrest consequences for weapons violations.
  - a. Automatic recommendation for expulsion for anyone who possesses or uses a weapon.
  - b. Automatic recommendation for expulsion for anyone who possesses or uses a look-alike weapon in a threatening manner.
  - c. Police prosecution of all firearm violations.
4. Establish a school reporting system to enable teachers, students and parents to report suspected or actual possession of weapons. The reporting system should be widely publicized, easily accessible, and allow the person to remain anonymous, if necessary.
5. Develop a follow-up program or other alternatives (educational, psychological or vocational) to assist the re-entry student suspended or expelled for weapons violations.
6. Publicize the weapons policy and consequences in the student handbook, *Insight*, PTA Newsletter, VBS Channel 28 and discipline brochure.
7. Provide training and staff development in weapons detection,

reporting and confiscation. Also provide training in student confrontations when weapons are involved.

**Outcomes:** Consistent enforcement of divisionwide weapons policy.

**District Policies and Procedures-C  
Virginia Beach City Public Schools  
Department of Instructional Services**

***Safe Schools Plan***

**Issue:** Youth Gangs

**Goal:** Student gang activity will be prevented and reduced in all schools.

**Strategies:**

1. Keep all schools neutral territory.
2. Identify all known gang members.
3. Establish a meeting with the principal and all known gang participants to inform all individuals concerned that gang involvement and gang-related activities will not be tolerated on, in or near the school property.
4. Notify the Office of the Superintendent and the police department of all gang activity.
5. Demonstrate through the standards of student conduct that weapons, violence, vandalism, extortion and drugs will not be tolerated on or near school grounds.
6. State through the student dress code that gang insignias, clothing and hair styles will not be allowed.
7. Establish a high visibility approach of school personnel to get to know the students and foster positive relationships between students and staff.
8. Provide administration and staff in-service and training in the dynamics of gang involvement, identification of gang characteristics and tendencies, and response techniques to gang behavior.
9. Recommend practices which administrators and staff can use to reinforce positive self-images, behaviors and attitudes of students.
10. Offer school-sponsored extracurricular activities and/or employment opportunities as alternatives to gang activity and participation.
11. Conduct PTA and community meetings to discuss the signs and symptoms of gang behavior and how to direct children from gang involvement.

12. Develop an alert system for students, parents and the community to notify administrators of potential or actual gang activity.
13. Photograph for the record and remove all graffiti as soon as possible after it appears.

**Outcomes:**

- Eliminate gang intimidation in the school.
- Facilitate better relationships between staff and students.
- Assist parents of gang-involved students.
- Create a safe school environment.
- Involve community agencies: e.g., police, F.B.I. etc.

**District Policies and Procedures-D  
Recommended Search Procedures and  
Techniques for School Administrators*****General procedures***

1. Always have an adult witness when conducting a search. This is for your protection as well as for strengthening testimony at the time of trial. What you don't need is to be on the witness stand and have the defense attorney ask you what happened to Johnny's \$200 watch that was in his locker at the time you conducted your search. The purpose is, of course, to raise a "reasonable doubt" in the mind of just one juror that maybe Johnny did have a \$200 watch and you stole it.
2. Whenever a female student is being questioned or searched, an adult female should be present. A male administrator should not leave himself open to charges or accusations of taking "liberties" with the female student.
3. Always conduct searches in such a manner as to reduce to a minimum any embarrassment to the person being searched.
4. When a student's locker is being searched, it is always advisable to have the student present. If more than one student shares a locker, have all parties assigned to the locker present when the locker is opened for the search. A word of caution: Having the student or students present does not mean allowing the student to open the locker or to be in close proximity to the locker. Stand the person against the opposite wall with another administrator when the locker is opened. This is for your personal safety. If the reason for the search is because you believe there is a gun in this particular locker, you don't want the student getting to it before you do.
5. Escort the student to the area where the search will be conducted. Never let the student out of your or the escort's sight

until after the search is completed. If the student is coming from a classroom, make sure all of the student's personal property is brought along. This includes books, pocketbooks, coats, jackets, hats, briefcases, lunch bags, etc. Don't allow any stops along the way. A quick visit to the bathroom, a stop to give a friend a message or any other ruse that will distract you or the escort will in all probability result in the loss or destruction of the evidence.

6. Plan ahead when a search is anticipated. Arrange for another adult to be available to assist you. Have the room where the questioning and search is to take place selected before the student comes to you. Have the room arranged so that a straight back, armless chair is provided for the student. Tell your secretary you do not want to be interrupted while questioning and searching the student.
7. When the student is brought into your office, have him or her remove all outer garments, i.e., coats, jackets, hats or sweaters; take possession of all objects the student is carrying; and have the student sit in the chair provided.
8. If the student has a briefcase, pocketbook or some other personal item in which the suspected item could possibly be hidden, ask the student if he or she objects to these items being searched. If the student's response is "yes," they do object, you probably will have a legal problem if you proceed with the search. The best suggestion for handling this situation is to have someone call the parents of the student and request that they come to the school. While awaiting the arrival of the parent, keep the student under constant observation. When the parent arrives, advise him or her of the circumstances and ask their permission to open and search the container. If the parent does not cooperate, suspend the student and have the parent remove the student from school.

*Remember*, your primary objective for conducting the search was to fulfill your legal duty to provide for the safety and welfare of *all* students and staff in your building, not to obtain evidence for trial.

### *Specific search techniques*

1. *Search of a person.* Have the individual remove all items from his or her pockets. Set these items aside until after you have completed the search of the person. Place yourself to the side of the person being searched and, starting at the head, work your way down the side of the body where drugs, weapons or other contraband can be hidden. A favorite trick is to wear a necklace

or chain and have attached to the chain a container for drugs or even a small knife. Often the object attached to the chain will be hanging down the person's back, in the area between the shoulder blades. Another hiding place is to tape drugs or weapons to the inside of the forearm, thigh, waist, crotch or leg calf. When you have completed one side of the individual, walk behind the person and repeat the search procedure. Take your time. It is better to be thorough than to be too quick and miss the object you are searching for.

When you have completed the search of the individual, turn your attention to the items removed from his or her pockets. Take each item and examine it closely. Open up that pack of cigarettes and make sure the cigarettes are the only item in the package. Take the pocket lighter apart, pull the cotton wadding out of the base of the lighter and check that area. Unscrew ball-point pens, look inside eyeglass cases, and check the hatband and sweatband. When searching clothing, make sure you "crush" the material. Don't be satisfied with a light pat against a pocket. A small packet of drugs is not a bulky object and is easy to miss.

One common mistake, even by seasoned police officers, is to stop searching once the item being sought is found. *Don't stop searching until the person or object has been thoroughly searched.* Who's to say the individual has only one bag of marijuana or only one weapon. It's amazing what else you might find in a thorough and professional search.

2. *Search of lockers.* Start at the top shelf and remove each item from the locker. Thoroughly search each item as it is taken out and upon completion of the inspection of the object, place the object on the floor. Do not put anything back into a locker until the entire locker and its contents have been inspected.

## Appendix II

### Assessment Survey-A

#### Sample Student Crime and Violence Self-report Survey

*The following questions are about things you or people you know may have done that are against the law. We hope that you answer all the questions, but if you find one which you feel you cannot answer honestly, leave it blank. Remember that no one in this school will see your answers.*

1. Have any of your brothers ever been picked up by the police?  
 Yes       No       I have no brothers

2. Have any of your sisters ever been picked up by the police?  
 Yes       No       I have no sisters
3. How many of your *close* friends have been picked up by the police? (Please write a number) \_\_\_\_\_

*For each act listed below, we would like you to answer the following questions. First, during your life have you ever done this? Check the correct response — Yes or No. Then go on to say how many times you have done this in the past year or past month. Please write down only one number for your answer. If your answer is never, mark 0. If you cannot remember the exact number of times you did something, write down the number that is your best guess.*

- 4a. Have you *ever* been picked up by the police?  
 Yes       No
- 4b. How many times have you been picked up by the police in the *past year*? (Please write a *number*) \_\_\_\_\_
- 5a. Have you *ever* broken into a school and taken something?  
 Yes       No
- 5b. How many times have you broken into a school and taken something in the *past year*? (Please write a *number*) \_\_\_\_\_
- 6a. Have you *ever* pulled a weapon on someone while on school property?  
 Yes       No
- 6b. How many times have you pulled a weapon on someone while on school property? (Please write a *number*) \_\_\_\_\_
- 7a. Have you *ever* beaten someone up while on school property?  
 Yes       No
- 7b. How many times have you done this in the *past year*? (Please write a *number*) \_\_\_\_\_
- 8a. Have you *ever* been beaten up by someone while on school property?  
 Yes       No
- 8b. How many times have you been beaten up by someone while on school property. (Please write a *number*) \_\_\_\_\_
- 9a. Have you *ever* broken the windows of a school building?  
 Yes       No
- 9b. How many times have you done this in the *past year*? (Please write a *number*) \_\_\_\_\_
- 10a. Have you *ever* been suspended or expelled from school?  
 Yes       No
- 10b. How many times have you been suspended or expelled from school in the *past year*? (Please write a *number*) \_\_\_\_\_

- 11a. Have you *ever* taken things you were not supposed to take from a desk or locker at school?  
 Yes       No
- 11b. How many times have you done this in the *past year*? (Please write a *number*) \_\_\_\_\_
- 12a. Have you *ever* gotten into trouble with teachers, principals or other school authorities for using or possessing drugs?  
 Yes       No
- 12b. How many times have you done this in the *past year*? (Please write a *number*) \_\_\_\_\_
- 13a. Have you *ever* gotten into trouble with teachers, principals or other school authorities because of your use or possession of alcohol?  
 Yes       No
- 13b. How many times have you done this in the *past year*? (Please write a *number*) \_\_\_\_\_
- 14a. Have you *ever* drunk whiskey, gin, vodka or other "hard" liquor while in school?  
 Yes       No
- 14b. How many times have you drunk whiskey, gin, vodka or other "hard" liquor while in school in the *past month*? (Please write a *number*) \_\_\_\_\_
- 15a. Have you *ever* smoked marijuana (grass, pot) while in school?  
 Yes       No
- 15b. How many times have you smoked marijuana (grass, pot) while in school in the *past month*? (Please write a *number*) \_\_\_\_\_
- 16a. Have you *ever* used cocaine while in school?  
 Yes       No
- 16b. How many times have you used cocaine while in school in the *past month*? (Please write a *number*) \_\_\_\_\_
- 17a. Have you *ever* drunk beer or wine while in school?  
 Yes       No
- 17b. How many times have you drunk beer or wine while in school in the *past month*? (Please write a *number*) \_\_\_\_\_
- 18a. Have you *ever* used downers or barbiturates (reds, goofballs) while in school?  
 Yes       No
- 18b. How many times have you used downers or barbiturates (reds, goofballs) while in school in the *past month*? (Please write a *number*) \_\_\_\_\_
- 19a. Have you *ever* used uppers or amphetamines (speed, pep pills, bennies) while in school?  
 Yes       No

- 19b. How many times have you used uppers or amphetamines (speed, pep pills, bennies) while in school in the *past month*? (Please write a *number*) \_\_\_\_\_
- 20a. Have you *ever* sniffed glue or inhaled any other gases or sprays to get high while in school?  
 Yes       No
- 20b. How many times have you sniffed glue or inhaled any other gases or sprays to get high while in school in the *past month*? (Please write a *number*) \_\_\_\_\_
- 21a. Have you *ever* sold illegal drugs such as heroin, marijuana, LSD or cocaine while in school?  
 Yes       No
- 21b. How many times have you sold illegal drugs such as heroin, marijuana, LSD or cocaine while in school in the *past month*? (Please write a *number*) \_\_\_\_\_
- 22a. Has being high from alcohol or drugs *ever* affected your school performance?  
 Yes       No
- 22b. How many times has being high from alcohol or drugs affected your school performance in the *past month*? (Please write a *number*) \_\_\_\_\_
23. Do you belong to a gang?  
 Yes       No
24. Do gangs cause trouble at your school?  
 Yes, a lot  
 Yes, some  
 Yes, a little  
 Hardly any  
 No  
 Don't know  
 There are no gangs at my school
25. How many times *this school year* have the following things happened to you? (Please write a *number*; if your answer is never, write a 0.)
- (a) How many times this school year did someone steal something from your desk, locker or other place *at school*? \_\_\_\_\_
- (b) How many times this school year did someone take money or things directly from you by using force, weapons or threats *at school*? \_\_\_\_\_
- (c) How many times this school year did someone physically attack and hurt you *at school*? \_\_\_\_\_

Source: Paramount (California) School District.

**Assessment Survey-B****Sample *Teacher Crime and Violence Self-report Survey***

1. *How many times* since the beginning of *this* school year have the following happened to *you personally in this school?* (Mark 0 if this did not happen to you this year.)

Damage to your personal property \_\_\_\_\_ times this school year  
 Theft of your personal property \_\_\_\_\_ times this school year  
 Was physically assaulted \_\_\_\_\_ times this school year  
 Was verbally abused or sworn at \_\_\_\_\_ times this school year  
 Felt physically threatened \_\_\_\_\_ times this school year

2. How serious are the following problems in your school?  
 (Circle one on the scale of 1 to 5.)

	No Problem	Small Problem	Moderate Problem	Fairly Big Problem	Very Big Problem	Don't Know
School vandalism	1	2	3	4	5	0
Physical attacks on teachers	1	2	3	4	5	0
Physical attacks on students	1	2	3	4	5	0
Violent incidents among students	1	2	3	4	5	0
Theft in the schools	1	2	3	4	5	0
Gangs	1	2	3	4	5	0
Alcohol use	1	2	3	4	5	0
Drug use	1	2	3	4	5	0
Drug selling	1	2	3	4	5	0
Carrying weapons	1	2	3	4	5	0

3. Is delinquency a problem in the neighborhoods surrounding your school?

1      2      3      4      5      0

4. Compared to *last* school year, would you say that crime in this school has increased, decreased or remained about the same?  
 (Check one.)

\_\_\_\_\_ Increased this year  
 \_\_\_\_\_ Decreased this year  
 \_\_\_\_\_ About the same this year

5. Approximately how many times since the beginning of this school year have the following misbehaviors forced removal of a student from your classroom? (If none, please mark 0.)
- \_\_\_ Verbal assaults on other students
  - \_\_\_ Verbal assaults on the teacher
  - \_\_\_ Writing on desks and walls
  - \_\_\_ Being high on drugs
  - \_\_\_ Physical assaults on other students

*Source: Paramount (California) School District.*

### Assessment Survey-C Sample Youth Gang Survey

Please circle the letters that most closely match your feelings:

- SA = Strongly agree
- A = Agree
- U = Undecided
- D = Disagree
- SD = Strongly disagree

- |   |    |   |   |   |    |
|---|----|---|---|---|----|
| 1. I think it is all right for someone to write graffiti.   | SA | A | U | D | SD |
| 2. I feel good about participating in recreation, sports, church or school programs with others my age. | SA | A | U | D | SD |
| 3. I feel good about my friends joining a gang.   | SA | A | U | D | SD |
| 4. I feel good about working hard and doing my best in school.  | SA | A | U | D | SD |
| 5. I would not care if my brother or sister joined a gang.  | SA | A | U | D | SD |
| 6. I would like to have a tattoo put on me with the name of the gang from the neighborhood I live in.   | SA | A | U | D | SD |
| 7. I always do whatever my friends want me to.  | SA | A | U | D | SD |
| 8. If my friends join a gang, I will think about joining one too.                                       | SA | A | U | D | SD |
| 9. I would feel good about myself if I joined a gang.   | SA | A | U | D | SD |
| 10. I wouldn't mind joining a gang.   | SA | A | U | D | SD |
| 11. I would like to miss a lot of school.   | SA | A | U | D | SD |

- |  |    |   |   |   |    |
|--|----|---|---|---|----|
| 12. It doesn't matter what other people my age think of me.              | SA | A | U | D | SD |
| 13. I don't think anyone would care if I joined a gang.                  | SA | A | U | D | SD |
| 14. There is nothing really wrong with gangs.                            | SA | A | U | D | SD |
| 15. Being part of a gang would be fun.                                   | SA | A | U | D | SD |
| 16. I think my parents wouldn't mind if I joined a gang.                 | SA | A | U | D | SD |
| 17. I am sure if I joined a gang it would not do anything to my parents. | SA | A | U | D | SD |
| 18. I do not like being with people who use dangerous drugs.             | SA | A | U | D | SD |
| 19. If my friends tell me to do something, I will do it.                 | SA | A | U | D | SD |
| 20. I would do what my friends do just to be accepted by them.           | SA | A | U | D | SD |
| 21. I feel the most important when I am around or with my friends.       | SA | A | U | D | SD |

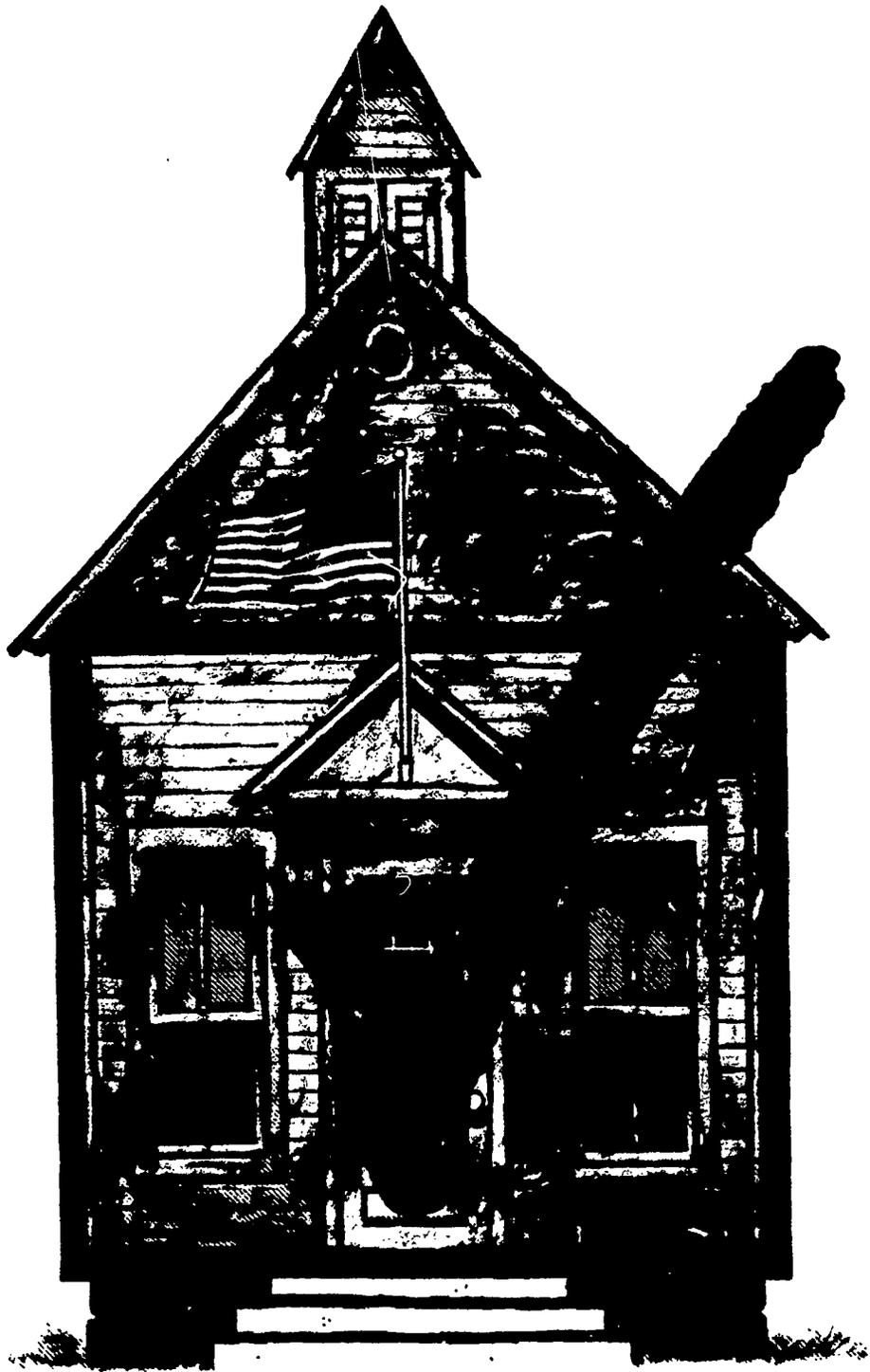
*Source: Paramount (California) School District.*

---

## Chapter IV

# School security

<b>The issues</b> .....	<b>189</b>
<b>Assessing the problems</b> .....	<b>192</b>
<b>Prevention policies</b> .....	<b>192</b>
<i>Target hardening</i> .....	193
<i>Physical protection systems</i> .....	197
<i>Police and security personnel</i> .....	199
<b>Prevention strategies</b> .....	<b>201</b>
<b>Response strategies</b> .....	<b>202</b>
<b>Sample programs</b> .....	<b>206</b>
<b>Bibliography</b> .....	<b>212</b>
<b>Appendix — Assessment survey</b> .....	<b>215</b>



## Chapter IV

# School security

For many years, theft, vandalism and arson have helped erode the learning environment in schools throughout our nation. Crimes against school property continue to escalate as costs soar for school police and security staffs, their equipment, and the replacement and repair of lost property. The dramatic rise in cost for school insurance premiums has been a serious problem for education in recent years, and many schools have hired security or police officers to help patrol their hallways.

This chapter describes strategies to make schools *physically* secure. While most of the approaches also will reduce crimes against individuals, the primary focus of this section is the reduction of crimes against property. Research data, assessment tools, effective prevention and response strategies, and model programs are included.

### The issues

American schools always have been attractive targets for vandalism, arson, theft and other criminal, malicious or mischievous activity. (Table 4-A defines these crimes.) Expensive equipment in schools that remain vacant on weekends and half of each weekday tempts criminals.

Beginning in the 1960s, schools faced a marked increase in financial losses from these crimes. While educators and criminal justice personnel have worked continually over the past two decades to control school crime, its drain on educational resources continues. Because no uniform federal school crime reporting system exists, national statistics indicating dollar losses for school property crime are unavailable. (Table 4-B provides statistics for Los Angeles County Schools, which demonstrate the serious financial losses resulting from vandalism, arson, burglary and other property crimes.)

In addition to a monetary drain, acts of school crime also have significant social costs. The impact of racial epithets spray painted on a wall goes far beyond the expense of removing it. Abusive

**Table 4-A**  
**Definitions of Crimes Against School Property**

**Arson:** The unlawful burning or attempt to burn school or personal property.

**Burglary:** Unlawful entry into any building, including any school building, with the intent to commit any felony or theft.

**Theft:** Unlawful taking of school or personal property with the intent to permanently deprive the lawful owner of its possession. Theft may be petty or grand, depending on the value of the property taken. Values distinguishing petty and grand theft vary from state to state.

**Trespass:** The unlawful entering of school grounds by persons not attending, not working or not having other legitimate business at the school. (Suspended students may be considered trespassers.)

**Vandalism:** A criminal and intentional act of defacing or destroying school or personal property.

**Bomb incidents:** Threatening to place, placing or detonating any explosive device on school property.

**Note:** These definitions are general. Consult area law enforcement agencies for specific local definitions.

words can destroy student morale, disrupt intergroup relations and undermine the authority of administrators. Incidents with high social cost can damage the educational process as much as those with high monetary loss.

In 1979, the California Legislature officially recognized school crime as a specific issue and outlined initial steps toward dealing with it. State lawmakers passed a bill creating a statewide school crime and violence reporting structure. Statewide uniform reporting was an important first step for several reasons. When districts underreport or overestimate losses, it results in unfair and inaccurate comparisons between schools and districts. State, county and local governmental agencies need accurate school crime statistics to develop or revise intervention and prevention programs. In addition, state lawmakers need accurate, complete information on school crime before enacting legislation to assist in school crime prevention. Inaccurate data make legal efforts somewhat sporadic, sometimes addressing the problems and sometimes missing them.

In 1982, 56 percent of California's voters approved Proposition 8, an initiative known as the "Victims' Bill of Rights." A portion of this measure (Article I, Section 28[c]) states that all students and staff in California public schools have the *inalienable* right to attend school on campuses which are safe, secure and peaceful.

**Table 4-B**  
**Offenses Against Property**  
**Statistics for Los Angeles County Schools**  
**(elementary and secondary)**

	Vandalism	Dollar losses	Arson	Dollar losses	Burglary	Dollar losses	Thefts	Dollar losses
1986-87	13,179	4,340,945	248	2,181,398	3,889	1,515,308	2,332	726,501
1985-86	10,799	4,350,910	255	5,366,300	4,439	952,305	2,071	587,534
1984-85	21,615	6,663,332	184	3,660,060	4,455	1,629,472	3,573	721,181
1983-84	16,819	3,708,993	195	3,772,485	4,098	1,393,921	3,229	582,822
1982-83	17,977	3,641,058	208	1,322,634	4,923	1,569,667	3,661	667,484
1981-82	18,902	4,528,189	221	2,522,783	5,456	1,781,738	3,800	615,370
1980-81	20,907	3,836,735	309	2,484,530	6,050	1,766,111	3,643	296,071
1979-80	21,617	3,918,384	249	1,451,947	5,798	1,512,358	3,455	545,451
1978-79	20,705	2,897,039	400	3,760,594	5,588	1,343,506	3,512	569,159
1977-78	18,630	2,557,751	253	1,389,618	5,278	1,149,719	2,940	400,422
1976-77	19,724	2,611,713	217	1,818,351	5,171	921,523	2,930	331,633
1975-76	18,438	2,593,172	317	1,223,151	5,621	1,003,853	2,789	329,247
1974-75	17,685	2,586,576	303	701,702	6,239	1,047,163	3,352	391,889
1973-74	16,442	4,074,299	176	540,944	3,306	484,274	1,984	210,995
<i>% of change -- 1973-74 to 1986-87</i>								
	-20%	+7%	+41%	+303%	+18%	+213%	+18%	+244%

**Property offense totals**

	Number of incidents	Dollar losses
1986-87	19,648	8,764,152
1985-86	17,564	11,316,026
1984-85	29,827	12,674,045
1983-84	24,341	9,458,221
1982-83	26,769	7,200,843
1981-82	28,379	9,448,080
1980-81	30,909	8,383,447
1979-80	31,119	7,428,140
1978-79	30,205	8,570,098
1977-78	27,101	5,497,510
1976-77	28,042	5,683,220
1975-76	27,165	5,149,423
1974-75	27,579	4,727,330
1973-74	21,912	5,310,512
Grand totals	370,560	109,611,047

*% of change -- 1973-74 to 1986-87*

-10% +65%

*Source: The Standard School Crime Reporting Program, California State Department of Education, April 1988.*

California's lawmakers responded to this mandate by approving a package of school crime bills. Assembly Bill 2483 was passed, again establishing a statewide standard school crime reporting program. Assembly Bill 1649 requires that the governing board of any school district prescribe student discipline rules and notify the

***The most successful programs are those developed jointly by site administrators and others in the community. A school safety coordinating committee should include site administrators, certificated and classified staff, students, parents, community and school police or district security staff, as well as representatives from local law enforcement agencies.***

parent or guardian of all registered pupils of the availability of those rules. The measure also requires that the rules be adopted by each school at least every four years and states the procedure for their adoption. Each school must file a copy of rules and procedures with the district superintendent and the governing board. Another component of the package was proposed as Assembly Bill 4600, which would require schools to adopt a school site safety plan and give annual progress reports toward the implementation of the plan at open and public meetings.

### **Assessing the problems**

Accurate recording of school crime is essential. Before developing programs to improve security, educators need data to identify specific school security weaknesses. (The Appendix at the end of this chapter provides a check list to help identify security needs.) Administrators also are advised to review the physical layout of the campus to determine problem areas.

Information from the check list and security review should be evaluated along with data about school-related incidents. Security assessments must consider the frequency and seriousness of injury accidents; amount of damage to personal and school property; equipment and facilities; and number of criminal incidents on or off campus at school-sponsored events.

Data analysis makes it possible to initiate preventive measures based on past experience. For instance, a high incidence of crimes against property suggests the need for one or more of the following: the identification of property, fire and burglar alarms, key control procedures, night police patrols, campus police or security personnel, upgraded exterior lighting or implementation of a campus night darkness program. (See "Lights Out/Vandalism Hot Line" in the Sample Programs section.) Student education programs and campaigns involving parents, community and law enforcement agencies in campus security are other options.

Once areas of vulnerability are identified, educators are able to take action.

### **Prevention policies**

When patterns of school crime are identified, prevention and response techniques can be implemented to make schools more physically secure. The most successful programs are those developed jointly by site administrators and others in the community. A school safety coordinating committee should include site administrators, certificated and classified staff, students, parents, community and school police or district security staff, as well as representatives from local law enforcement agencies.

Committee members should get information about successful school security techniques employed elsewhere and consider adapting them to the local site. A number of specific site protection measures are designed to prevent and respond to property loss. Local law enforcement crime prevention personnel also have valuable expertise in this area.

Target hardening, physical protection systems and school police or security personnel are the primary approaches to increasing site protection. Target-hardening techniques make a campus less vulnerable to damage. Physical protection programs include the use of key control programs, property identification and marking, and alarms and closed-circuit television systems.

### *Target hardening*

School perimeters may be made safer by using these security approaches:

- When a choice exists, locate the school where it is visible from neighboring homes and businesses.
- Make entries, loading docks and administrative offices visible from the street.
- Provide vehicle access around buildings to permit night surveillance and access by emergency vehicles and fire equipment.
- Minimize blind spots by using crime-prevention landscaping.
- Keep school grounds free of gravel or loose rock surfaces.
- Paint directional signs on curbs or streets.
- Place dumpsters far enough away from school buildings so they do not serve as ladders to upper floors or roofs.
- Put meters, transformers, valves and other mechanical or electrical devices inside buildings or in locked, fenced areas.
- Mount flagpoles on the roof or provide nylon-covered wire halyards and locked cover boxes for halyard cleats.
- Limit roof access by securing exposed drains, window frames, stored items, decorative ledges, vehicles and other things onto which a person can climb or grasp.
- Limit walkway cover near second-floor windows.
- Install exterior lights with break-resistant lenses or mesh covers and light standards made of galvanized steel or concrete to illuminate the exterior of buildings and surrounding grounds.
- Remove exterior door handles from all but main doors to deny entrance to intruders.

Parking area recommendations include:

- Design parking lots to discourage through traffic cruising, and use speed bumps to reduce traffic speed.
- Reduce large parking lots to smaller units to decrease the imper-

sonality that encourages property damage.

- Mix faculty and student parking.
- Designate secured areas for motorcycle and bicycle parking.
- Prohibit student access to cars during school hours.
- Provide entries and exits with strong, lockable gates.
- Create a separate lot for students who have unusual hours of attendance, and monitor these entrances and exits.
- Identify all parking areas with large signs clearly stating access regulations.
- Use gates or removable bollards to keep unwanted traffic off walks and driveways.
- Construct gates of heavy-duty materials with crossbars *above* bumper height to discourage forced entry by cars.
- Locate parking lots where easy and direct visual observation is possible.

Playground security proposals include:

- Restrict or eliminate vehicular access from open grass areas or tennis courts.
- Plan playgrounds with separate activity areas. Keep vehicles out of sports and play areas and block their entry to other unauthorized areas.
- Fence off playgrounds from main school buildings and restrict or supervise activities around buildings during non-school hours.
- Limit and supervise areas where students congregate.
- Locate playground equipment where school staff, neighbors and police patrols have good visual surveillance.
- Provide durably constructed playground equipment with a minimum of parts, tamper-proof fasteners and setscrews or tack welds on bolts. Wooden parts should be treated with fire-retardant material.
- Install drinking fountains that are recessed into exterior walls rather than freestanding fountains.
- Anchor trash cans to holders or anchor posts to prevent overturning or theft.

Landscaping contributes to school security if it incorporates these methods:

- Place trees at least 10 feet from buildings to prevent window and roof access.
- Trim trees to permit visibility from across campus.
- Plant shrubs with durable stems and limbs in large masses, making them less attractive to abuse than single shrubs.
- Plant shrubs with mature heights of two to four feet.
- Place prickly plantings next to walks and buildings to discourage

pedestrian traffic.

- Use fencing and gates with discretion, except for locations with a special need such as athletic fields and utility areas. Chain link fencing is advised because it allows visibility.
- Place high perimeter fencing with gates around all walks, driveways and construction sites near school facilities.
- Add barbed wire to the top of chain link fencing that could serve as a ladder to upper floors or roofs.
- Use heavy-duty padlocks on all gates. These locks should have common keys that permit school police or security personnel, local police, firemen and maintenance personnel to enter with minimal delay.
- Either implement a nighttime total darkness policy (See "Lights Out/Vandalism Hot Line" in the Sample Programs section.) or increase campus lighting to fully illuminate all areas.
- If a total darkness program is selected, turn off all interior and exterior lights when buildings are no longer in use at night. Total darkness has been shown to reduce losses and conserve energy.
- Implement a school neighborhood watch program and request area residents to report any nighttime campus activity or unusual lights to local police or a hot line number.
- If a policy of night lighting is selected, place wall-mounted or freestanding lights a minimum of 12 to 14 feet from the ground.
- Direct lights at the facility if the building is to be patrolled from the exterior or at the grounds around the facility if the building is to be patrolled from within.
- Increase illumination at potential points of access to the building.
- Provide automatic controls for light fixtures.
- Install lights with sodium or mercury vapor lamps for cost efficiency and better illumination. Lights should reduce shadow areas and provide illumination without glare.

Building security is improved with these design approaches:

- Avoid building designs that provide an institutional appearance.
- Minimize ornate, non-functional building decorations to reduce replacement costs.
- Design walls to prevent roof access.
- Install wall-mounted fixtures flush or recessed to eliminate hand-holds for climbing.
- Build walls a minimum of 12 feet high, using a mar-resistant material.
- Make roofs of fire-resistant or fire-retardant material.
- Design walls, stairwells and corridors for high visibility.
- Prohibit construction of half walls or freestanding walls attached to buildings.

***Implement a school neighborhood watch program and request area residents to report any nighttime campus activity or unusual lights to local police or a hot line number.***

- Avoid suspended tile ceilings, which are easily vandalized and often used to hide weapons, drugs and other items.
- Limit and supervise the entry and movement of persons on the school grounds and within school buildings.
- Provide a written description of visitor regulations to students, parents and community members, and post it at all entrances.
- Designate one entrance for visitors coming onto campus during school hours. This should be posted clearly and enforced at each entrance.
- Use I.D. cards or some other identification system for students.
- Prohibit the entrance of unauthorized visitors.
- Evaluate building access requirements and eliminate unnecessary doorways. The fewer doors, especially those with lock sets, the fewer security problems.
- Eliminate handles and locks on the outside of exterior doors used primarily as exits.
- Install doors constructed of steel, aluminum alloy or solid-core hardwood. Any necessary glass doors should be fully framed and made of burglar-resistant tempered glass.
- Secure double doors with multiple-point, long flush bolts.
- Eliminate recessed doorways.
- Use door hinges with non-removable pins.
- Place locks on all doors leading to high-risk areas.
- Do not use surface-mounted locks or locks with knob-mounted key access.
- Keep exposed hardware on exterior doors to a minimum.
- Install door frames made of pry-proof metal.
- Use pick plates, easily installed door security devices, to prevent tools and plastic cards from releasing door bolts.
- Install heavy-duty vertical strips dividing panes of windows or narrow moldings on the inside of double doors.
- Securely fasten the armored strike plate to the door frame in direct alignment to receive the latch easily.
- Use attractive, but sturdy, kickplates to minimize damage to doors.
- Provide fire doors in appropriate locations.
- Consider the location, size and necessity of windows.
- Avoid placing windows on the ground floor, if possible, and no lower than three feet from the floor unless they are protected. Avoid windows at the end of hallways where they are especially susceptible to damage and near outside play or gathering areas.
- Install interior window frames with putty.
- Use lexan, polycarbonate, fiberglass and other hard, scratch-resistant and break-proof coatings for windows.
- Install wire mesh security screens or grillwork where repeated

window breakage occurs.

- Avoid sliding or casement windows that create significant security risks.
- Leave no money in cash registers, and leave register drawers open when empty.
- Lock all cabinets not in use.
- Construct lavatory toilet partitions and their doors of laminated plastic with a mixed, dark color grain.
- Conceal as much lavatory piping as possible. Install concealed and automatic flush valves and avoid tank-type flushing devices.
- In lavatories use alternatives to plate-glass mirrors and avoid using windows for ventilation. Fit the bottoms of lavatory doors with grills, if code permits.
- Lock and secure cafeterias/multipurpose areas, administrative offices, safes and vaults, science laboratories, music rooms, shop, arts/crafts rooms, student store/supply rooms, library/media centers, gyms, locker rooms and service areas.

#### *Physical protection systems*

Key control systems are among the most cost-effective and efficient security programs. Kentucky has developed an effective key control system. (Table 4-C lists the criteria to be met in establishing a key control system.) Property identification and inventory programs sponsored by local law enforcement agencies have generated wide community support during the last decade. Many schools have followed this example by marking all school equipment with identification numbers and the school's name.

This is a relatively simple and inexpensive process, and many local law enforcement agencies provide use of electric engraving tools at no cost. The engraving process should be coupled with a campaign informing students, school personnel and community members that items are marked and, therefore, easier to recover. Many local police departments provide small warning stickers to notify the public of property identification projects. The latest advancement is the use of microdots, a tiny dot that contains detailed identification information and is easily placed on an item.

Portable or easily sold school items always should be clearly marked. These include calculators, typewriters, computers, laboratory balances, tools, audio-visual equipment, shop equipment and kitchen appliances. Schools must combine the identification program with inventory procedures. Without a written record of school equipment and the assigned identification numbers, the system is ineffective as a deterrent to theft or for recovering stolen items. To itemize inventory, both serial and identification numbers should be recorded. Periodic physical checks are necessary.

***Portable or easily sold school items always should be clearly marked. These include calculators, typewriters, computers, laboratory balances, tools, audio-visual equipment, shop equipment and kitchen appliances.***

**Table 4-C**  
**Kentucky Schools Key Control System**

Strict control and proper maintenance of all keys are essential to school security. Minimum criteria to be met in key control are:

- a. The responsibility for lock and key control is assigned to a single individual.
- b. All file keys and duplicates are kept in a steel key cabinet, under lock and key.
- c. All keys are maintained and issued with strict supervision, including the requirement that each key issued must be signed for (using key-receipt tags).
- d. Master keys are kept to a minimum and are retained by top administrative personnel only (principal, assistant principal and maintenance supervisor).
- e. Appropriate fines or penalties are enforced when an employee loses a key.
- f. Employees are never permitted to have a duplicate key made on their own.
- g. Keys are always collected from employees who terminate or transfer.
- h. All keys are collected and logged at the conclusion of the school year; the key-control system is re-evaluated, and inadequacies are corrected, before keys are reissued.
- i. Tumblers in vital locks are changed if keys are permanently lost or stolen.

*Source: Vandalism and Theft in Kentucky Schools; Vol. II, School Security and Control. Kentucky Department of Justice, Office of Crime Prevention.*

Anchor pads and other locking devices installed on portable equipment, such as typewriters, computers and audio-visual devices, discourage thefts from outsiders, employees and students. Put computers and other expensive equipment in well-secured rooms with appropriate locks.

Alarm systems are only one part of a complete security system, which includes hardware, construction and school design. Since alarm systems are only as good as those monitoring and responding to them, it is unwise to allocate resources for an expensive system if school personnel and local law enforcers are unfamiliar with its features and unable to respond appropriately.

A properly working alarm system reduces burglary, vandalism and fire losses. Knowledge of the system can serve as a deterrent to would-be violators, and effective responses to alarms can increase apprehension of criminals. Alarms protect property after the staff has left campus, and a wide variety of equipment is available to meet individual school needs and budgets. Several districts may choose to share monitoring to reduce operating costs.

Alarm systems have disadvantages as well. It is expensive to install a system providing comprehensive protection, and an improperly designed or applied system is costly and troublesome when

false alarms occur. Systems usually restrict the use of buildings by staff members during non-school hours, and school building and campus layouts often make a comprehensive system difficult to design. Because systems require monitoring and repair, they constitute a continuing expense to schools. In addition, relying too much on a system can create a false sense of security. No alarm system is 100 percent reliable. Procedures to deal with false alarms should be outlined to respond to this inevitability.

If school personnel decide an alarm system is practical, an independent consultant or security specialist familiar with campus needs, rather than the distributor or manufacturer, should design the system. Local law enforcement crime prevention officers, school security directors, plant maintenance directors or private security consultants should be engaged.

Closed-circuit television is another component available for school security programs. These systems require trained monitors, adding operating costs to an already expensive investment. A motion-detecting lens that responds to movement by sounding an alarm or activating videotaping equipment can be added. The high cost makes this approach practical only when security risk and equipment value are high. Newer systems are dual-purpose, providing both protection and the monitoring of utilities, which can significantly reduce utility costs.

#### *Police and security personnel*

Having police or security personnel on campus is disturbing to some people, and proposals for such programs often spark controversy. However, a police or security staff may be needed to respond to the serious problems threatening students and educators. As one educator observed, at one time he thought having school police or security people in schools meant you didn't like kids, but now he knows it means you do.

School police or security personnel provide a daily law enforcement presence on campus. Officers patrol school grounds, parking lots, bathrooms and hallways; check student and visitor identifications; and handle truants, class cutters, trespassers and disruptive students. They investigate all criminal complaints, prevent disturbances during school and at school-sponsored functions, and counsel students and school personnel on legal and safety-related matters.

The most successful programs do not resemble paramilitary operations but reflect a carefully balanced collaboration between educators and police or security personnel. School police or security officers are members of the educational support staff and are specially trained technicians who work directly with students

***School police departments, which staff full-time professional law enforcement personnel, are the choice of many large school districts experiencing increasing incidents of crime and violence. Rather than having formal working relationships with local police departments, districts create their own police force, in accordance with state law.***

to identify, prevent and solve campus crime problems. Law enforcement personnel also can help to educate students by teaching classes on law, government, drugs, child abuse and other related topics.

School districts also may employ the services of public law enforcement officers. Personnel brought in from community law enforcement agencies may be used for school security duties, counseling or educational tasks. This approach provides trained staff familiar with established communication and reporting systems. The number of officers used varies according to need, and no school district employment screening or training is required. However, some programs do allow schools to screen which officer is to be assigned, and many programs include a training module. When local law enforcement personnel are used, rarely does anyone question their authority, which extends beyond campus boundaries. This creates a prestigious, highly visible, armed and uniformed law enforcement presence.

There are disadvantages to such a force, however. Some students and staff may resent an armed, uniformed police presence on campus. Because these officers are responsible to an authority other than the school board, sworn police officers may lack flexibility in responding to delinquent behavior. In addition, if schools are required to pay for their services, this protection is expensive.

Traditionally, contract security forces have been a popular school security presence. Generally, schools hire a security company to provide services as needed to prevent disruptions and protect property after school hours. These services are economical, the size of the force can be varied according to need, and usually the school can dictate how guards are dressed and armed. Such assignments are at the discretion of school authorities, and schools maintain summary rights of dismissal against unsatisfactory personnel.

On the negative side, contract guards have a high turnover rate and personnel are sometimes poorly trained and educated. These guards may also lack a commitment to and understanding of the school's educational philosophy, and they may lack insight into student problems. Students and staff may express disrespect for "rent-a-cops." The school district may not be able to conduct complete pre-employment background checks or may encounter problems with contractors who do not properly supervise guard personnel. Finally, there is some uncertainty about the school's liability for misconduct or errors by contract guards.

School police departments, which staff full-time professional law enforcement personnel, are the choice of many large school districts experiencing increasing incidents of crime and violence. Rather than having formal working relationships with local police

departments, districts create their own police force in accordance with state law. Police personnel are selected by the school system to which they are solely responsible. Personnel with a commitment to educational programs and with an interest in youth are recruited. The school system determines if the police officers will carry arms or wear uniforms and can stipulate reporting procedures. This approach allows flexibility in handling delinquent behavior, and district police forces provide an in-house unit for quick emergency responses. A police agency must meet the same requirements as the city jurisdiction.

A disadvantage to maintaining a district police force is its higher cost. The district must provide salaries and benefits, and this program must come from the general budget. It is difficult to increase the size of the unit quickly and special training programs are required. It is also possible that a conflict over jurisdiction may arise between district and community law enforcement departments.

### **Prevention strategies**

Schools can take other preventive measures that directly involve students in reducing property crime and other threats to school security:

- Written school policy should stipulate that vandalism is a crime, not a prank, and requires a law enforcement response. Policy statements also should specify that bomb threats or bomb placement on school property is viewed as an act of terrorism and indicate community police will respond to these cases.
- Vandalism incentive funds, established by the school, district, community or local businesses, are used to pay for repairs after vandalism incidents. Students and community members should know that money unspent at the end of the school year will revert to the school for its chosen use.
- Student school beautification and improvement projects increase student pride and responsibility.
- School and community pride programs enlist students, teachers and community members to achieve excellence, which includes a crime-free environment. Photo, essay and poster contests can stimulate interest.
- Adopt-A-School programs encourage community organizations and businesses to affiliate with a campus to improve its educational or physical image. The community sponsor can contribute leadership and financial support.
- "Youth Crime Watch" programs recruit students to report incidents on school campuses and help reduce robberies, thefts and trespassing.
- Task forces, which include educators, students, community mem-

bers and law enforcers, can work to develop community awareness and specific solutions for campus problems.

- Vandalism forums, sponsored by school and law enforcement agencies and held in the community, inform citizens of the causes and costs of school vandalism.
- Informational assemblies and curriculum units advise students of the direct costs of vandalism and other school property crimes.
- Extended use of school facilities deters vandals, who begin to feel the school is constantly occupied. Community groups, local colleges and universities, and law enforcement agencies can be encouraged to use school facilities on evenings and weekends.
- School personnel should secure, inventory and monitor chemical storage areas.

### **Response strategies**

When laws and school regulations are violated, schools must employ response measures that will complement law enforcements efforts:

- Punishment, counseling and diversion efforts should be used with students who have a history of school crime.
- Enlist the support of local businesses to donate cleanup materials to be applied by vandals when caught.
- Initiate "School Watch" programs and provide students and community members with phone numbers to be called if they witness suspicious or criminal behavior. Permit callers to remain anonymous.
- Establish secret witness and reward programs that allow students and community members regular access for reporting incidents while remaining anonymous.
- Negotiate with the city or county to locate and remove school and community graffiti and support intervention and diversion programs for minor offenders and high-risk youth.
- Provide Saturday cleanup and fix-it options for first-time, minor offenders as restitution.
- Recruit students to serve on "rub-out" squads to clean up school or community graffiti immediately after it is discovered.
- Publicize the penalties of suspension or expulsion and arrest for vandalism and graffiti offenses.
- Encourage and assist with the prosecution of those suspected of arson, vandalism, bomb threats, burglary and theft.
- Repair damage immediately to deny vandals the opportunity to admire their work and to minimize its social impact.
- Establish restitution procedures to identify those guilty of property crimes and to require payment from them for damage caused. (Table 4-D is a restitution policy adopted by the Orange

**Table 4-D**  
**Orange (California) Restitution Policy**

It is the intention of the Board of Education to seek redress of any individual, in the amount of the damage for any act of vandalism committed by that individual, or from the parents of that individual if a minor.

Vandalism includes, in the present sense, negligent, willful or unlawful damaging or taking of any district-owned real or personal property. The parent or guardian having custody or control of a minor who commits an act of vandalism cannot be held liable for more than \$7,500 for that act, except that the parent or guardian may also be held liable for any reward not exceeding \$7,500, paid pursuant to Section 53069.5 of the Government Code.

Any pupil, or the parent or guardian of any minor pupil, shall also be held liable for all property belonging to the school district lent to the pupil or individual and not returned on demand of the district. Any pupil of the district who commits an act of vandalism may also be liable to disciplinary action by the district.

*Source: Orange (California) Public Schools.*

Unified School District Board of Education [California].)

- Institute *youth* courts with student juries to try vandalism cases and recommend action to the school administration.
- Provide school staff with written procedures to respond to bomb threats. (Table 4-E is a written policy statement.) Bomb threat procedures should be accompanied by an incident report form. (Table 4-F is a model form.)

**Table 4-E**  
**Response Procedures for**  
**Bomb Threat, Bomb Found and Bomb Explosion**

***Bomb threat***

- Call the police.
- Evaluate the threat. On the basis of evidence, experience and judgment, is the threat credible?

***Evidence:***

1. Sign of illegal entry into the school.
2. Report of missing chemicals.
3. No sign of illegal entry.

***Experience:***

1. All other bomb threats have proven to be a hoax.
2. Tests are scheduled for today.
3. Today is the first warm day of spring.
4. Today is Senior Skip Day.
5. Your school is playing its rival school in an athletic event.
6. The caller was obviously a youngster and there was giggling in the background.
7. Unexplained student unrest.
8. Employee strike.

***Judgment:***

1. Based on all the available information, the threat is or is not credible.
- Conduct a limited search of the building.
  - Consult with the police on the scene.

***Device found***

- Call the police.
- Isolate the area.
- Evacuate the school by stages. Do not pull the fire alarm as this may require students and staff to walk directly near the device — evacuate by room starting with those rooms nearest the device.
- Do not handle the suspected device — leave that to the experts.
- Re-enter the building only after being advised to do so by the officer in charge.

***Explosion***

- Assuming for the moment that the person in charge did not cease to exit as the result of the explosion, and the phones still work, all of the following suggestions are applicable:
  1. Call the police and fire departments.
  2. Evacuate the remainder of the building.
  3. Develop a list of casualties.
  4. Call your lawyer; this is particularly important in those cases in which a bomb threat had been received and you made the decision not to evacuate the school.
- Pending arrival of emergency equipment and additional help, get the students and staff to a safe location and maintain control of the students.
- Whether or not the building will be reoccupied will be a decision made by the fire department and/or the police department; in either case, the following steps will need to be followed:
  1. Notify the superintendent.
  2. Establish an information center staffed by senior officials who will be able to handle all inquiries about injured persons and the status of the school.
  3. Arrange transportation for the students should the school be closed.

*Taken from Effective Strategies for School Security by Peter D. Blauvelt, Reston, Virginia: National Association of Secondary School Principals, 1981.*

**Table 4-F  
Bomb Threat Report**

Time and date reported: \_\_\_\_\_  
How reported: \_\_\_\_\_  
Exact words of caller: \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

Questions to ask:

1. Where is the bomb to explode? \_\_\_\_\_
2. Where is the bomb right now? \_\_\_\_\_
3. What kind of bomb is it? \_\_\_\_\_
4. What does it look like? \_\_\_\_\_
5. Why did you place the bomb? \_\_\_\_\_
6. Where are you calling from? \_\_\_\_\_

Description of caller's voice:

Male \_\_\_\_\_ Female \_\_\_\_\_ Young \_\_\_\_\_ Middle-Aged \_\_\_\_\_ Old \_\_\_\_\_

Tone of voice:

Serious \_\_\_\_\_ Joking \_\_\_\_\_ Giggling or laughing \_\_\_\_\_

Sounded tense \_\_\_\_\_ Sounded very sure \_\_\_\_\_ Sounded unsure \_\_\_\_\_

Had an accent? \_\_\_\_\_ If so, what kind? \_\_\_\_\_

Is voice familiar? \_\_\_\_\_ If so, whose? \_\_\_\_\_

Were there any background noises? \_\_\_\_\_

Other voice characteristics: \_\_\_\_\_

Time caller hung up: \_\_\_\_\_ Action taken: \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

Name, title, address, telephone number of recipient: \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

Action take by recipient: \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

### **Sample programs**

Beginning in the 1970s, several collaborative approaches to solving school property losses were adopted by schools and communities across the nation. Some focused on target-hardening techniques for improving school security while others concentrated on vandalism and property loss prevention. Examples of successful programs follow. (Note: Schools or organizations with programs that combat property loss are encouraged to submit a description of their program to the National School Safety Center. These programs will be reviewed for addition to the Center's clearinghouse resources.)

### **Safe Schools Plan**

Virginia Beach City Public Schools  
Office of the Superintendent  
P.O. Box 6083  
Virginia Beach, Virginia 23456  
804/427-4521

#### *Background and objectives*

Charged with the responsibility to develop a comprehensive and coordinated school safety effort, a Safe Schools Plan Committee was formed, comprised of 30 representatives from various school and community groups. The committee identified the most critical school safety concerns facing the district:

- Weapons/possession of weapons
- Open access to school buildings by public
- Lack of visitor identification
- Lack of bus rider identification
- Trespassers on school property
- Confrontation with disruptive students
- Student control/general discipline

#### *Program description*

The comprehensive plan for school safety includes the appointment of a Safe Schools Coordinator to facilitate divisionwide implementation of the Safe Schools Plan. Other major components of the plan include the development of an emergency preparedness plan for each school; a student conduct management system to establish reasonable, consistent and clear limits for students; written policy and procedures for weapon violations; a uniform written record for reporting all criminal incidents; and an age-appropriate safety curriculum for grades K-12.

#### *Interagency collaboration*

The Safe Schools Plan was designed cooperatively by school

administrators, teachers, parents, local police, students and community representatives. Elements of the plan are coordinated with other community agencies, including the police department, PTA, local television stations and the City Attorney's office.

### **Lights Out/Vandalism Hot Line Program**

Portland Public Schools Police Department

501 N. Dixon Street

Portland, Oregon 97227

503/249-3307

#### *Background and objectives*

Portland Public Schools decided to implement an unconventional approach to campus crime reduction in 1981. Modifying existing programs in Reno, Nevada, and San Diego, California, the Portland Public Schools Police Department implemented an energy conservation and crime-reduction program.

#### *Program description*

The Lights Out program requires total darkening of all exterior and interior lighting once the school is secured for the night. Campus neighbors have a 24-hour district police phone number to call if any suspicious light or activity occurs. At night, custodians leave school window coverings open one foot at the bottom to provide a clear space for neighbors to view activity and to increase the feeling of vulnerability in burglars and vandals. The hot line, which allows people to make anonymous tips about crimes or questionable activity, is an essential part of the program.

Double savings resulted from the program. The district saved about \$200,000 annually in reduced kilowatt consumption compared with 1980. Between 1981 and 1985, district crime and vandalism averaged 54 percent less annually than the 1980 cost. Alarm systems also have been installed in 98 of the district's 103 schools, and vandalism after school hours has become almost non-existent.

The darkness system succeeds because (1) darkness conceals witnesses as well as criminals, (2) burglars need light to move in unfamiliar rooms, (3) the smallest light appears to be a spotlight in complete darkness, (4) any noise or light alerts neighbors, (5) vandals need light to get satisfaction from painting graffiti or other destruction, and (6) social interaction between vandals is diminished. A district spokesman noted that while lighting empty homes can deceive criminals into thinking someone is home, everyone knows schools are empty at night so lighting offers few advantages. One or more good leads providing information on crime or suspicious activity are received weekly by hot line operators.

***Campus neighbors have a 24-hour district police phone number to call if any suspicious light or activity occurs. At night, custodians leave school window coverings open one foot at the bottom to provide a clear space for neighbors to view activity and to increase the feeling of vulnerability in burglars and vandals.***

*Interagency collaboration*

In addition to favorable media coverage introducing the Lights Out and Hot Line programs, the key supporters of these programs are school neighbors. During the summer of 1981, when district day security staff experienced a reduced, non-school workload, officers contacted 2,812 residences to explain the program and to distribute informational brochures and stickers with the 24-hour hot line phone number. Printing, the only extra expense, cost \$93. Contacting new neighbors is now done by school administrators, custodians and PTA members.

**Vandalism Intervention Program**

Los Angeles County Office of Education  
9300 East Imperial Highway  
Downey, California 90242  
213/922-6291

*Background and objectives*

To combat growing vandalism problems in Los Angeles County schools, the district conducted a three-year study (1980-1983) to determine if creating a positive school environment could displace previous influences that stimulated vandalism. The project sought to assess a new teacher training package developed to reduce school vandalism and to evaluate any changes in teacher and student performance.

*Program description*

Eighteen elementary and junior high schools from the 12 Los Angeles County school districts were selected because they maintained data collection systems on vandalism costs. Nine schools randomly were assigned to an experimental project group and the other nine were the control group.

The intervention program had several components. A team was established on each campus to develop schoolwide vandalism reduction programs. Consultants met on site with selected teachers and program personnel. During the first year of the program, a series of 10 staff development workshops was conducted over an eight-month period.

Workshop topics included conditions that foster school vandalism and disruption, anti-vandalism programs, positive and negative reinforcement, identifying reinforcers, modeling, response costs, time-out, over-correction, and punishment and its side effects. Other sessions focused on practical applications and covered improving staff morale, teaching students to seek positive recognition and to reinforce teachers, evaluating assessment methods, adapting

material to student reading levels, employing positive reinforcement techniques, and developing effective school discipline plans of positive and negative consequences for behavior.

The study found statistically significant reductions in vandalism for two consecutive years for those schools participating in intervention programs. For details on the program and its results, consult "Preventing School Vandalism and Improving Discipline: A Three-year Study," *Journal of Applied Behavior Analysis*, Winter 1983, pp. 20-34.

#### *Interagency collaboration*

The project was jointly funded by an Elementary and Secondary Education Act, Title IV-C Grant, and the Los Angeles County Superintendent of Schools. Program personnel came from California State University, Los Angeles. Local law enforcement agencies helped site administrators evaluate security patterns and needs while local social service agencies provided counseling services for "at-risk" students.

#### **Police Anti-Vandalism Education (P.A.V.E.)**

Nassau County Police Department  
Community Projects Bureau  
1490 Franklin Avenue  
Mineola, New York 11501  
516/535-7920

#### *Background and objectives*

The Nassau County Task Force on Vandalism was established in 1980. The Task Force urged the establishment of a Police Anti-Vandalism Education (P.A.V.E.) program to work with known vandals. The Community Projects Bureau of the County Police Department designed and implemented the program.

The first P.A.V.E. program began in 1981. Vandals and their parents must be recruited to participate in P.A.V.E. programs, which promote the concept that vandalism hurts people, not just property. P.A.V.E. informs offenders and parents about vandalism as a crime and its criminal and civil penalties.

#### *Program description*

P.A.V.E. presentations are 2½ hours long and are given on the second Tuesday of each month at the Nassau County Police Department.

The P.A.V.E. program is successful, according to follow-up statistics indicating the recidivism rate for vandalism dropped to one-half of one percent for those youths attending the P.A.V.E.

***Vandals and their parents must be recruited to participate in P.A.V.E. programs, which promote the concept that vandalism hurts people, not just property. P.A.V.E. informs offenders and parents about vandalism as a crime and its criminal and civil penalties.***

***Phase three proved to have the greatest impact, reinforcing the first two phases. During this part of the program, high school leaders selected 12 to 15 classmates from each of the four high school grade levels to speak with elementary and middle school students about causes of vandalism and theft and the need to control them.***

program. Further, law enforcement records indicate a general decrease in vandalism offenses within the County of Nassau.

#### *Interagency collaboration*

P.A.V.E. programs are designed and taught by trained law enforcement officers from the Nassau County Police Department and certified counselors from a variety of county youth-serving agencies.

Officers working in P.A.V.E. are members of the Youth Patrol section of the Community Projects Bureau. They are part of a group of 16 officers working directly in the school and community to prevent acts of juvenile crime, especially vandalism, through education and enforcement. These officers regularly teach elementary and secondary students the P.A.V.E. concept that "vandalism hurts people, not just property." During the summer, these officers also conduct an anti-vandalism patrol in the community.

#### **Vandalism and Theft Reduction**

James Madison Memorial High School  
201 South Gammon Road  
Madison, Wisconsin 53717  
608/829-4002

#### *Background and objectives*

In 1975, administrators at Madison High School studied accumulated property and vandalism offense losses. Following this, a program was implemented to identify motives and causes of student vandalism and theft and to develop long-range methods to curtail such actions.

#### *Program description*

The program employed the successful behavior modification techniques identified by L. Kohlberg and E. Turiel (*Recent Research in Moral Development*, New York: Holt, Rinehart and Winston, 1971).

The three-phase program began with education/prevention and deterrence/apprehension stages. Phase three proved to have the greatest impact, reinforcing the first two phases. During this part of the program, high school leaders selected 12 to 15 classmates from each of the four high school grade levels to speak with elementary and middle school students about causes of vandalism and theft and the need to control them. These students attended training sessions, discussed and learned written scripts, and visited schools on a regular basis. The message was clearly stated: "Everybody's not doing it, and you have the responsibility to stop it." These efforts were monitored and reported by local television

and newspapers, which reinforced such positive behavior throughout the community.

The program has shown a steady decrease in yearly vandalism costs, from \$7,400 in 1975 to less than \$1,200 for 1987, as well as a significant decrease in the number of vandalism incidents. (Additional information is available in "A Three Phase Program to Curb Vandalism and Theft in Schools" by John R. Olson. ERIC Document ED199289, 1980.)

#### *Interagency collaboration*

The Madison High School project is primarily an intraschool effort. The program has no community sponsor but requires cooperation between the high school administrators and feeder school staff. The local media have promoted the project by announcing anti-vandalism awards, peer counseling efforts and crime-reduction reports.

## Bibliography

Baker, Keith, and Rubel, Robert J. *Violence and Crime in the Schools*. Lexington, Massachusetts: Lexington Books, 1980.

Blauvelt, Peter D. *Effective Strategies for School Security*. Reston, Virginia: National Association of Secondary School Principals, 1981.

California Department of Justice, School Safety Center. *School Security Handbook: "Get a Handle on a Vandal."* Sacramento, California: California Department of Justice, 1981.

California State Department of Education. "The Standard School Crime Reporting Program." Sacramento, California: California State Department of Education, April 1988.

Coleman, James C.; Hoffer, Thomas; and Kilgore, Sally. *High School Achievement*. New York: Basic Books, Inc., 1982.

Ducey, M. "Vandalism in High Schools: An Exploratory Discussion." *Violence and Crime in the Schools: Theoretical Perspectives*. Edited by Keith Baker and Robert Rubel. Lexington, Massachusetts: D.C. Heath and Co., 1980.

Dust, Fred A. "Solution to Vandalism Lies in Developing Sense of Community." *National Association of Secondary School Principals Bulletin* 68, 472 (May 1984).

Hawaii State Department of Justice, Crime Commission. *Violence and Vandalism in the Public Schools of Hawaii*. Hawaii: State Department of Justice, 1980.

Irwin, F.G. "Planning Vandalism Resistant Educational Facilities." *Journal of Research and Development in Education* 11, 2 (Winter 1978):42-52.

Kentucky Department of Justice, Office of Crime Prevention. *Vandalism and Theft in Kentucky Schools, Vol. II, School Security and Control*.

Mayer, G. Roy; Butterworth, Tom; Nafpaktitis, Mary; and Sulzer-Azaroff, Beth. "Preventing School Vandalism and Improving

Discipline: A Three-Year Study." *Journal of Applied Behavior Analysis* 4 (Winter 1983).

Michigan Governor's Task Force on School Violence and Vandalism. *Report and Recommendations*. Michigan: Governor's Task Force on School Violence and Vandalism, November 1979.

Michigan State Department of Education, Office of School and Community Affairs. *Student Behavior and Parental/Community Affairs Involvement: Impacting for Change*. Lansing, Michigan: Department of Education, 1978.

National School Boards Association. "Survey on School Discipline." Washington, D.C.: National School Boards Association.

New Jersey State Department of Education. *Reducing Violence, Vandalism and Disruption in the Schools: A Special Report*. Trenton, New Jersey: New Jersey State Department of Education, May 1979.

New York City Board of Education. *Manual of Rules and Procedures for School Safety Personnel*. New York: New York City Board of Education, April 1983.

Olson, J.R. *Three Phase Program to Curb Vandalism and Theft in Schools*. Arlington, Virginia: ERIC Document Reproduction Services, 1980.

Reilly, D.M. "Coping With Vandalism in Family, School and Community." *Theoretical Perspectives*. Edited by Robert Rubel. Baltimore, Maryland: Johns Hopkins University, Center for Social Organization of Schools, 1979.

Rubel, Robert. *Unruly Schools: Disorders, Disruptions, and Crimes*. Lexington, Massachusetts: D.C. Heath, 1977.

Smith, Charles. "Use These Strategies for Stronger School Security." *Executive Educator* 4, 12 (December 1982):21-22.

U.S. Congress, Senate Committee on the Judiciary, Subcommittee to Investigate Juvenile Delinquency. *School Violence and Vandalism: The Nature, Extent and Cost of Violence and Vandalism in Our Nation's Schools*. Washington, D.C.: Government Printing Office, 1976.

---

U.S. Department of Education, National Institute of Education. *Violent Schools — Safe Schools: The Safe School Report to Congress*. Washington, D.C.: Government Printing Office, 1978.

Vestermark, Seymore D., and Blauvelt, Peter D. *Controlling Crime in the School: A Complete Security Handbook for Administrators*. West Nyack, New York: Parker Publishing Company, Inc., 1978.

Warren, James H., and Rubenow, Robert C. "Combating School Vandalism — A Blueprint for Action." *National Association of Secondary School Principals Bulletin* 68, 472 (May 1984).

Wells, Elmer. *Vandalism and Violence: Innovative Strategies Reduce Cost to Schools*. Washington, D.C.: National School Public Relations Association, 1973.

Ziesel, J. *Stopping School Property Damage*. Boston, Massachusetts: American Association of School Administrators and Educational Facilities Laboratories, 1976.

## Appendix

### Assessment Survey Security Check List

Give your school a thorough crime prevention inspection now. Use this check list as a guideline to determine your school's strengths and weaknesses.

<i>Organization</i>	<u>Yes</u>	<u>No</u>
1) Is there a policy for dealing with violence and vandalism in your school? (The reporting policy must be realistic and strictly adhered to.)	_____	_____
2) Is there an incident reporting system?	_____	_____
3) Is the incident reporting system available to all staff?	_____	_____
4) Is there statistical information available as to the scope of the problems at your school and in the community?	_____	_____
5) Have the school, school board and administrators taken steps or anticipated any problems through dialogue?	_____	_____
6) Does security fit into the organization of the school? (Security must be designed to fit the needs of the administration and made part of the site.)	_____	_____
7) Are the teachers and administrators aware of laws that pertain to them? To their rights? To students' rights? Of their responsibility as to the enforcement of and respect for rules, regulations, policies and the law?	_____	_____
8) Is there a working relationship with your local law enforcement agency?	_____	_____
9) Are students aware of expectations and school discipline codes? Are parents aware?	_____	_____
10) Are there any actual or contingency action plans developed to deal with student disruptions and vandalism?	_____	_____
11) Is there a policy as to restitution or prosecution of perpetrators of violence and vandalism?	_____	_____
12) Is there any in-service training available for teachers in the areas of violence and vandalism and other required reporting procedures? (There must be training at all levels.)	_____	_____
13) Is there a policy for consistent monitoring and	_____	_____

- evaluation of incident reports? \_\_\_\_\_
- 14) Is the staff trained in standard crime prevention behavior? \_\_\_\_\_

*Existing security system*

- 1) Have there been any security problems in the past? \_\_\_\_\_
- 2) Are there specific staff assigned or trained in security awareness? \_\_\_\_\_
- 3) Is there an existing alarm system? \_\_\_\_\_
- 4) Do you have intrusion-detection equipment? Have you consulted with an expert? \_\_\_\_\_
- 5) If you have an alarm system, do you as an administrator know its capabilities and limitations? Do teachers and staff understand the basic working of the alarm system, so as to prevent leaving the security areas in such a condition as to cause needless false alarms? \_\_\_\_\_
- 6) Do you have a policy as to alarm response and does everyone involved clearly understand their responsibilities? \_\_\_\_\_
- 7) Is the system centrally located? \_\_\_\_\_
- 8) Is it local? \_\_\_\_\_
- 9) Is it a police alarm? \_\_\_\_\_
- 10) Is there a policy for consistent maintenance and testing of the system? \_\_\_\_\_
- 11) Do some members of the custodial staff work nights and weekends? \_\_\_\_\_
- 12) Are valuable items of property identified? \_\_\_\_\_
- 13) Are valuables properly stored? \_\_\_\_\_
- 14) Are high-target areas properly secured? \_\_\_\_\_
- 15) Is there a key control system? \_\_\_\_\_
- 16) Is there a visitor procedure? \_\_\_\_\_
- 17) Do students have I.D. cards or other identification? \_\_\_\_\_
- 18) Do all employees have I.D. cards? \_\_\_\_\_
- 19) Is there a policy for intruders, those who loiter or non-students on campus? (To insure a safe campus, violators should be arrested.) \_\_\_\_\_
- 20) Is there proper visibility of parking areas? \_\_\_\_\_
- 21) Is there supervision in hallways, corridors and other congregating places for students between classes, at lunch, and before and after school? (Teachers and staff must participate in supervision.) \_\_\_\_\_

- 22) Is the school designed with crime prevention in mind (landscaping, fencing, parking and exterior lighting)? \_\_\_\_\_
- 23) Is there a light/no-light policy for after school hours? \_\_\_\_\_
- 24) Whenever possible, is vandal damaged repaired immediately? \_\_\_\_\_

*Target hardware/perimeter*

- 1) Is there proper fencing around adjacent areas and target areas? \_\_\_\_\_
- 2) Are gates properly secured with working locks? \_\_\_\_\_
- 3) Is the perimeter free of rocks or gravel? \_\_\_\_\_
- 4) Are signs properly posted as to rules and enforcement? \_\_\_\_\_
- 5) Are signs properly designed for crime prevention? \_\_\_\_\_
- 6) If there is exterior lighting, is it properly directed? Is there proper intensity? Are target areas well lighted? Are there shadows? \_\_\_\_\_
- 7) Are all grips, window ledges, roof accesses and other equipment that could be used for climbing properly secured? \_\_\_\_\_
- 8) Are all items removed from the building area that could be used to (1) break in or (2) stand and climb on? (Examples: lumber, ladders.) \_\_\_\_\_
- 9) Is the school designed for vandal-resistant walls? \_\_\_\_\_
- 10) Do the texture, color, etc., act to deter vandal activity? \_\_\_\_\_

*Target hardware/exterior*

- 1) Is there a key control system? \_\_\_\_\_
- 2) Are outside handles removed from doors used primarily as exits? \_\_\_\_\_
- 3) Are first-floor windows non-existent or properly secured? \_\_\_\_\_
- 4) Is broken window glass replaced with plexi-glass or other break-resistant material? \_\_\_\_\_
- 5) Are school facilities kept neat and in good repair? \_\_\_\_\_
- 6) Are school facilities sectioned off to limit access by evening users? \_\_\_\_\_
- 7) Is after-hours use of playground facilities consistently and closely monitored? \_\_\_\_\_

- |   |       |       |
|---|-------|-------|
| 8) Are protective screens or window guards used?  | _____ | _____ |
| 9) Can any door locks be reached by breaking out glass?   | _____ | _____ |
| 10) Are your locks in good condition?   | _____ | _____ |
| 11) Are doors equipped with security locks in mind?   | _____ | _____ |
| 12) Are all exit doors secured by either deadbolt locks or chains and locks that will limit easy escape of vandals and/or burglars? | _____ | _____ |
| 13) Are locks maintained regularly and changed when necessary?  | _____ | _____ |
| 14) Are doors constructed properly?   | _____ | _____ |
| 15) Are door frames pry-proof?  | _____ | _____ |
| 16) Are high-target areas (such as the shop, administrative offices, etc.) sufficiently secured?                                    | _____ | _____ |

*Target hardware/interior*

- |   |       |       |
|---|-------|-------|
| 1) Is school property permanently and distinctly marked?  | _____ | _____ |
| 2) Has an inventory been made recently of school property?  | _____ | _____ |
| 3) Are school files locked in vandal-proof containers?  | _____ | _____ |
| 4) Are valuable items thieves can easily fence (such as typewriters, calculators, etc.) properly locked up or secured when not in use? (Valuable items should be stored in a security room or bolted down.) | _____ | _____ |
| 5) Is all money removed from cash registers?  | _____ | _____ |
| 6) Are cabinets properly secured?   | _____ | _____ |

*Security system*

- |  |       |       |
|--|-------|-------|
| 1) Are there specific persons designated to secure buildings following after-hours activity? | _____ | _____ |
| 2) Is someone made responsible for overall school security procedures?                       | _____ | _____ |
| 3) Do job descriptions include vandalism prevention duties?                                  | _____ | _____ |
| 4) Are security check lists used by school employees?  | _____ | _____ |
| 5) Through as many channels as possible, are vandalism costs made known to taxpayers?        | _____ | _____ |
| 6) Do local law enforcement agencies help and advise on vandalism prevention?                | _____ | _____ |

- |   |       |       |
|---|-------|-------|
| 7) Are administrators, teachers and students urged to cooperate with police?                    | _____ | _____ |
| 8) Is evening and weekend use of school facilities encouraged?                                  | _____ | _____ |
| 9) Do law enforcement or security personnel monitor school facilities during school hours?      | _____ | _____ |
| 10) Do law enforcement personnel, parents or students patrol the grounds after school hours?    | _____ | _____ |
| 11) Are local residents encouraged to report suspicious activity to school officials or police? | _____ | _____ |
| 12) Do students actively get involved in security efforts?                                      | _____ | _____ |
| 13) Are there emergency procedures for incidents, including fire and bombing?                   | _____ | _____ |

*Alarms*

- |   |       |       |
|---|-------|-------|
| 1) Is the entire system checked regularly or at least every six months?   | _____ | _____ |
| 2) Is the number of false alarms kept down to below two for any six-month period?   | _____ | _____ |
| 3) Can selected areas of the school be "zoned" by an alarm system that will indicate which area is being entered by the intruder? | _____ | _____ |
| 4) If public utility power fails, is there back-up power to keep the system operating without generating an alarm signal?         | _____ | _____ |
| 5) Are suitable procedures established for response and turning on and off the system?  | _____ | _____ |
| 6) Are the alarms the self-resetting type?  | _____ | _____ |

*Source: California Department of Justice, School Safety Center. School Security: "Get a Handle on a Vandal." Sacramento, California: California Department of Justice, 1981.*



## **NATIONAL SCHOOL SAFETY CENTER**

A PARTNERSHIP OF PEPPERDINE UNIVERSITY AND THE  
UNITED STATES DEPARTMENTS OF JUSTICE AND EDUCATION